AL-BAHER

CONNECT
PLUS

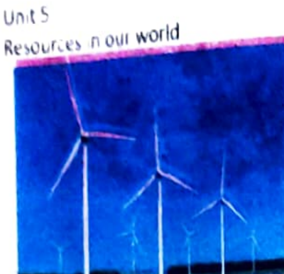


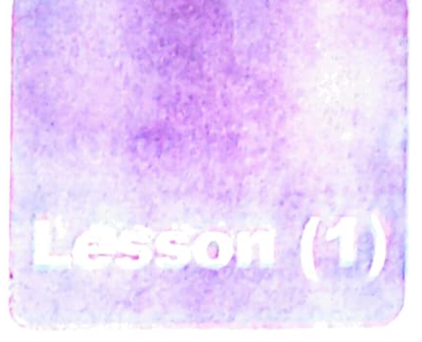


Contents

Scope and sequence

	Unit 1 What can I do?	Unit 2 Plants and animals	Unit 3 My world
Vocabulary	body systems: bone, blood, heart, lungs, muscles, skeleton, stomach, swallow	animals: amphibian, arachnid, bat, bird, fish, invertebrate, mammal, reptile, species, vertebrate; beak, fin, fur, gill, scales; crab, dragonfly, grasshopper, jellyfish, octopus, snail, squid Comparative and superlative adjectives; adverbs	my local area: community, neighborhood, citizenship history: dynasty, hieroglyphs, pharaoh, scribe governorates of Egypt, capital city music: clapping, ney, oboe, oud, qanun, rebaba, shabbaba, simsimeya, string instrument, wind instrument
Language	Mom wants to tidy the lounge. Capital letters: English, Egypt, Braille	An Asian elephant is smaller than an African elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. Some invertebrates can swim very well.	This is my neighborhood. It's mine. That's your bike. It's yours. Important dynasties ruled Egypt for many years.
Reading	A text about senses	Texts about animal classification; a text about animal sizes	A text about the history of ancient Egypt; texts about folk music and folk dancing
Writing	Choosing a suitable title for a text; a paragraph about a healthy lifestyle; notes to plan activities	Practicing dictionary skills; writing about advantages and disadvantages; a habitat report	Describing your community; a paragraph describing folk music or dance
Speaking	A dialog about physical and creative activities	A True or False game; discussion about colors; description of a picture	Talking about where you live; group work to make a tourist information guide
Listening	Interviews with children talking about senses; information about Paralympic athletes	Facts about animals; facts about under the sea world	Children describing their communities; information about governorates; musical instruments
Life skills	**Self-management**: eating healthily, living a healthy life **Respect of diversity:** differently-abled people	**Critical thinking:** considering advantages and disadvantages **Collaboration:** pair work about a micro-habitat	**Respect for diversity:** the different governorates of Egypt **Communication:** a tourist information guide
Values	**Appreciation of scienc** **Tolerance**	**Appreciation of science**	**Curiosity** **Participation**
Issues and challenges	**Preventative and therapeutic health** **Non-discrimination issues**	**Environmental responsibility**	**Loyalty and belonging** **National unity** **Awareness of duties and rights**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	Social studies: a healthy lifestyle Science: body systems; senses	**Science:** classification of animals Art: primary and secondary colors	**Social studies:** ancient Egyptian history; the governorates of Egypt **Music:** traditional Egyptian music and dance

	Unit 4 City and country	Unit 5 Resources in our world	Unit 6 Let's work
			
Vocabulary	places: city, congestion, densely populated, sparsely populated, inhabitant, isolated metropolitan, pedestrian, rural, services, traditional, urban, village irregular plurals: babies, buffaloes, children, geese, men people, potatoes, sheep, tomatoes, women craft: artisan, carpet, dye, spin, warp, yarn	Natural resources: renewable, non-renewable: coal, crude oil, fossil fuel, metal, mineral, natural gas, oil well, petroleum, plastic, soil, stone, water, wood wave power, wind power, tidal power, metropolitan, solar power, solar energy, electrical energy, mechanical energy Careers: application, career, experience, promotion, skill, talent, train	Transportation: air, pipe, rail, road, water career, podcast, search engine, browser, specific, passphrase, characters, relaxing, containers, Suez Canal, ship's captain, wave, entrepreneurs
Language	Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet. My grandma took me to a workshop so that I could learn about this craft. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.	The baby cries when she's hungry. Lara did her science project on global warming. Wael did his science project on tidal power. The baby cries when she's hungry. Both children presented their projects on Thursday.	People will travel to Mars for vacation in 2052. My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year. Punctuation marks: comma, exclamation point, period, question mark, apostrophe
Reading	A text about cities and villages A text about visiting a carpet workshop; a text about a city	A factual text about natural resources; a text about renewable energy	A literary text about economic activity; a factual text about passwords; a paragraph about natural resources
Writing	Sentences with subordinating conjunctions; a text about your city; a description of a design	an email to apply for a job; notes about a design	A diagram about tech jobs; structuring a paragraph; a chart to make a plan
Speaking	Describing where you live	Describing natural resources; a discussion about teamwork	Asking and answering about types of transportation; presenting a business plan
Listening	Descriptions of a city and a village; an interview about different places	A discussion about fossil fuels; a job interview	Children talking about transportation; a podcast about tech jobs; information about search engines
Life skills	**Creativity**: design a new area of smart growth for a city	**Collaboration**: [illegible] to be a good team member **Critical thinking and creativity:** design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source	**Collaboration, accountability and decision making**: creating and presenting a business plan
Values	Curiosity Objectivity	**Respect** **Work ethics**	**Independence**
Issues and challenges	Citizenship Sustainable development	Environmental responsibility Sustainable development Entrepreneurship	Citizenship / Entrepreneurship Technological awareness
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**Social studies:** places in town; giving directions; traditional crafts **Math:** multiplying and dividing numbers; adding and subtracting fractions **Art:** traditional crafts	**Social studies:** renewable and non-renewable resources **Science:** the role of science in improving people's lives	**Social Studies:** transportation services **Career education:** making a business plan **ICT:** search engines and strong passwords



LET'S REMEMBER !

Vocabulary كلمات

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
polar	قطبي	desert	صحراء
grassland	مراعي / أرض عشبية	wetland	أرض رطبة
baby	طفل رضيع	toddler	طفل يحبو
adult	شخص بالغ	teenager	مراهق
article	مقال	advertisement	إعلان
headline	عنوان رئيسي	caption	تعليق
vitamins	فيتامينات	protein	بروتين
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	fiber	ألياف
first-aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	syringe	سرنجة
bandage	ضمادة	crutches	عكاز

Help your child revise these words.
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

lake	بحيرة	river	نهر
oasis	واحة	spring	ينبوع ماء

needle	إبرة	pole	قطب
compass	بوصلة	magnet	مغناطيس

sloth	الدب الكسلان	cheetah	فهد
macaw	المكاو (ببغاء أمريكي)	chimpanzee	قرد الشمبانزي

Look and read.



This is a bracelet(1). It's made of wood(2).



This is a wheelchair(3). It's made of metal(4).



We used to go to the museum on Saturdays.



There's too much water in the cup.

1. سوار
2. خشب
3. كرسي متحرك
4. معدن

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر و يقرأ.

General Activities

1 Read and match.

1. Did Amir use to play boardgames?
2. How many books are on the shelf?
3. Is there enough paper in the printer?
4. If I drop this plastic cup, will it break?

a. No, it won't.
b. No, there isn't.
c. Yes, he did.
d. There are four.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You shouldn't eat too much ....
   a) sugar b) salad c) vegetables d) fruit
2. Veins carry blood .... the heart.
   a) away from b) to c) on d) in
3. Triplets are three ....
   a) lions b) sisters c) siblings d) goats
4. A .... checks the story before it is printed.
   a) copy editor b) designer c) farmer d) doctor
5. The body absorbs .... from our food.
   a) air b) saliva c) blood d) nutrients
6. A magnet will pick up .... objects.
   a) wooden b) glass c) metal d) plastic
7. Artists use shading to make a picture look ....
   a) three-dimensional b) tiny c) small d) flat

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. fast - run - you - How - can - ?

....

2. like - it - What - does - taste - ?

....

Lesson (2)

LET'S REMEMBER !

Read and act.

Fares	:	Hello! Can I interview[1] you for our school newspaper?
Doctor	:	Yes, of course[2]!
Fares	:	Thank you! I'm writing an article[3] about the new hospital. Is it very big?
Doctor	:	Yes, it is. It can help lots of patients to get better from injuries and diseases[4].
Fares	:	That's great. How many doctors and nurses work there?
Doctor	:	Oh, I don't know exactly[5], but there are a lot.
Fares	:	Do you think it was important to build a new hospital?
Doctor	:	Yes, I do. The old hospital was quite small. Now we have lots of new equipment, so we can do more scans[6] and surgery.
Fares	:	That's fantastic. Thank you for your help.

1. يحاور 2. بالطبع 3. مقالة 4. أمراض 5. بالضبط 6. أشعة

Help your child read and act the dialogue

Let's remember!

Read and learn.



When you ride a bike, you need a helmet to protect your head.

عندما تركب دراجة، تحتاج إلى خوذة لتحمي رأسك

All living things need water.

كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إلى الماء





Phonics



Listen and say.



straw
ماصة



pollution
تلوث



polar bear
الدب القطبي



swamp
مستنقع



race
سباق



treasure
كنز



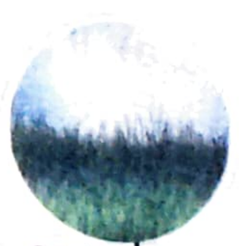
article
مقال



tea
شاي



moon
القمر



grassland
أرض عشبية / مراعي



tent
خيمة



generous
كريم



cobra
ثعبان الكوبرا



bandage
ضماده



river
نهر

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

many - article - interview - course

Sara : Hello! Can I 1) .... you for our school newspaper?

Doctor : Yes, of 2) ....!

Sara : I'm writing an 3) .... about the new hospital. Is it very big?

Doctor : Yes, it is.

Sara : How 4) .... doctors and nurses work there?

Doctor : I don't know exactly, but there are a lot.

Sara : That's fantastic. Thank you for your help.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... throw balls in the classroom.
   a) mustn't b) must c) should d) have to
2. I've .... drunk apple tea.
   a) yet b) never c) for d) ever
3. .... you freeze water, it becomes ice.
   a) If b) So c) But d) And
4. Printers .... made of cotton and paper.
   a) don't b) aren't c) isn't d) didn't
5. Dad .... go to the hospital for an operation.
   a) has to b) has c) have to d) does
6. The telegraph .... for sending Morse code.
   a) used b) using c) was used d) uses
7. If you don't press this button, the printer .... work.
   a) isn't b) wasn't c) will d) won't
8. A caption is .... under a photograph.
   a) wrote b) write c) writes d) written

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Let's remember!

9. When you ride a bike, you need a .... to protect your head.
   a) helmet b) glasses c) hat d) cap
10. How .... doctors and nurses work there?
   a) heavy b) many c) much d) high
11. All living things need ....
   a) soup b) juice c) water d) oil

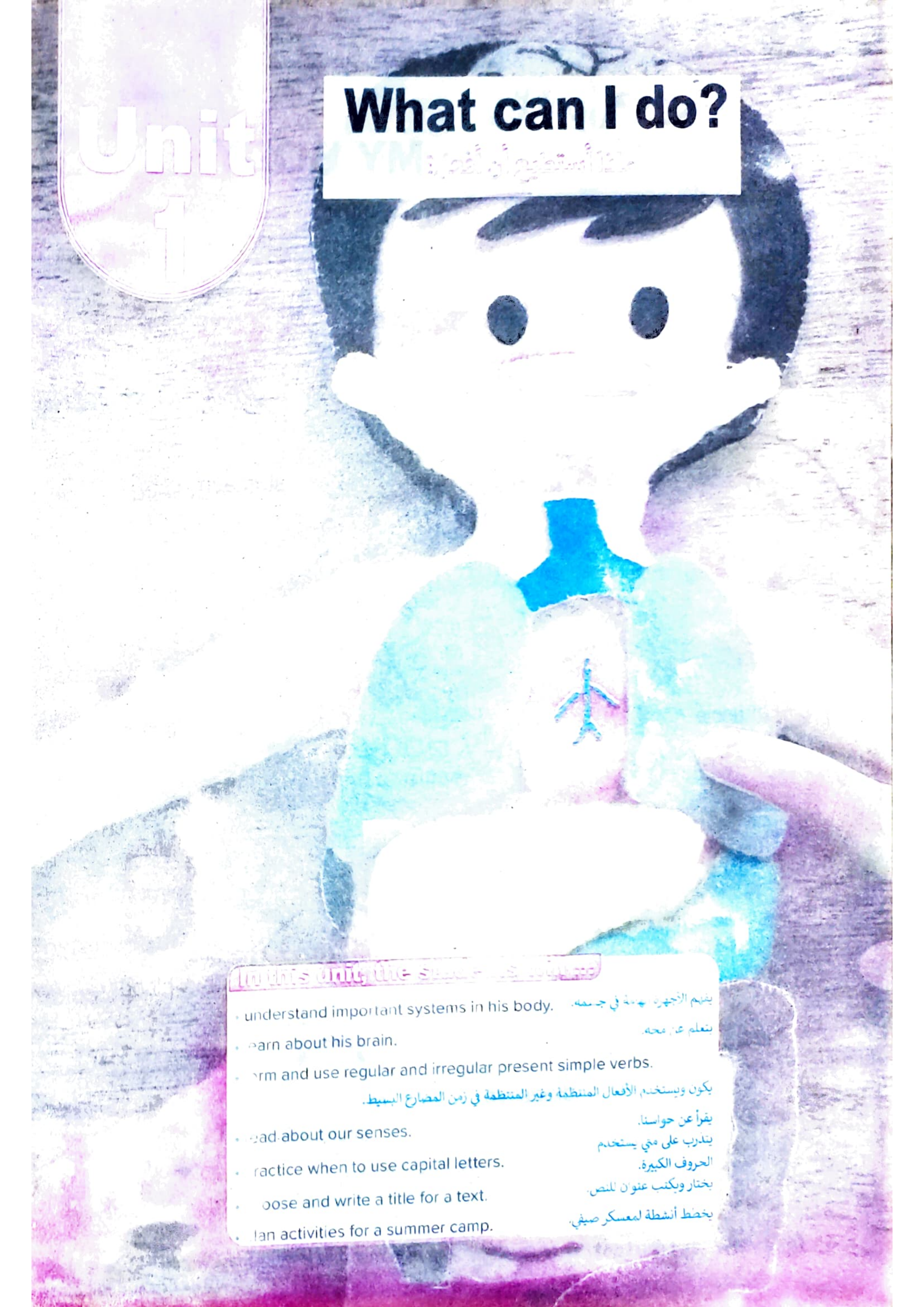
3 Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

1. When you stay positive, you feel happy.
2. All living things need water.
3. There isn't any sugar in fruit.
4. A newborn kitten is about six months old.
5. One teaspoon has four grams of sugar.
6. There is salt water in an oasis.

4 Circle the word with a different sound.

1.	audio	musical	vehicle
2.	draw	straw	swamp
3.	nutrition	dangerous	digestion
4.	fiction	race	city
5.	food	tent	mood
6.	nervous	enormous	acacia


Theme (1) I discover myself



Unit
1
What can I do?
understand important systems in his body.
يفهم الأجهزة المهمة في جسمه.
earn about his brain.
يتعلم عن مخه.
rm and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.
يكون ويستخدم الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن المضارع البسيط.
ead about our senses.
يقرأ عن حواسنا.
ractice when to use capital letters.
يتدرب على متي يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.
oose and write a title for a text.
يختار ويكتب عنوان للنص.
lan activities for a summer camp.
يخطط أنشطة لمعسكر صيفي.

Lesson (1)

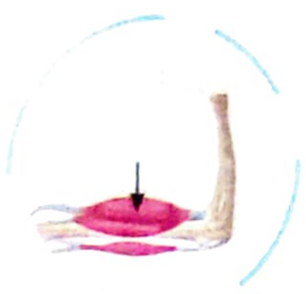
MY BODY

Listen and repeat.

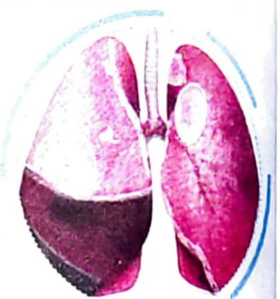

bone
عظمة


heart
قلب


stomach
معدة


muscle
عضلة


My Body
جسمي


lungs
رئتان


skeleton
هيكل عظمي

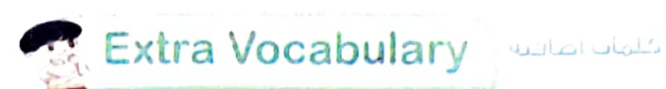

digestive system
الجهاز الهضمي


respiratory system
الجهاز التنفسي


blood
دم

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

special liquid	سائل خاص	strong	قوي	mouth	فم
organ	عضو (في الجسم)	energy	طاقة	nose	أنف
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	اكسجين		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	chew	يمضغ	chewed
swallow	يبتلع	swallowed	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
pump	يضخ	pumped	protect	يحمي	protected
attach	يوصل / يربط	attached	move	يتحرك	moved
lift	يرفع	lifted	pass	يمر	passed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go to	يذهب إلى	change ... into	يحول ... إلى
breathe in ... through	نتنفس ... من خلال	pass to	يمر إلى
make up of	يتكون من	attached to	متصل بـ
through the nose	خلال الأنف	make us strong	يجعلنا أقوياء

Did you know?



There are about five liters of blood in the human body.

يوجد حوالي خمسة لترات من الدم في جسم الإنسان.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read and learn.



Digestive system الجهاز الهضمي

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

نستخدم الجهاز الهضمي عندما نأكل ونشرب. نحن نمضغ ونبلع الطعام ثم يذهب إلى المعدة. في المعدة يقوم سائل خاص بتحويل الطعام إلى طاقة وعناصر غذائية نحتاجها في أجسامنا.

Respiratory system الجهاز التنفسي

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

نستخدم الجهاز التنفسي عندما نتنفس. نستنشق الهواء من خلال أنفنا ويذهب الهواء إلى رئتينا. في الرئتين يمر الأكسجين الذي في الهواء إلى الدم. يضخ قلبنا هذا الدم حول جسمنا.

Bones and muscles العظام والعضلات



Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

يتكون هيكلنا العظمي من جميع العظام الموجودة في جسدنا. تجعلنا العظام أقوياء وتحمي أعضائنا. تتصل العضلات بعظامنا وترفع العظام وتجعلها تستدير لتجعلنا نتحرك.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system when we eat and drink.
   a) circulatory b) respiratory c) digestive d) nervous
2. When we eat, we chew and .... our food.
   a) drink b) put c) swallow d) pump
3. The food goes to our ....
   a) brain b) stomach c) head d) nose
4. A liquid changes the food in our stomach into ....
   a) oil b) blood c) water d) energy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stomach - digestive - energy - swallow

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and
1) .... food, then it goes to our
2) .... In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into
3) .... and nutrients.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun (it) refers to ....
   a) air b) water c) blood d) heart
2. Our .... pumps blood around our body.
   a) heart b) muscles c) oxygen d) nose
3. The main idea of the text is our .... system.
   a) respiratory b) lungs c) digestive d) active

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Which organ do we use when we breathe? ....
5. Where does the air go when we breathe? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we ...., we use our respiratory system
   a) eat b) move c) breathe d) drink
2. We use our .... system when we eat
   a) digestive b) respiratory c) nervous d) muscles
3. The food goes .... our stomach when we swallow it
   a) in b) at c) on d) to
4. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food .... energy and nutrients.
   a) of b) into c) on d) under
5. We breathe in air through our ....
   a) stomach b) muscle c) head d) nose
6. Our heart .... blood around our body
   a) chews b) swallows c) pumps d) goes
7. Our skeleton is made .... all the bones in our body
   a) from b) into c) off d) up of
8. .... are attached to our bones
   a) Teeth b) Muscles c) Noses d) Mouths

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

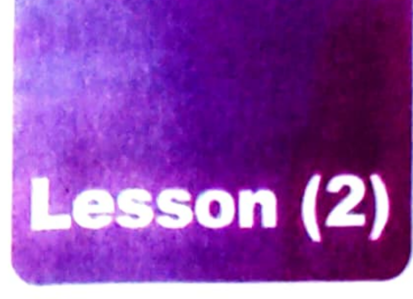
1. chew - swallow - We - food - and - .
....
2. heart - Our - blood - pumps - our body - around - .
....
3. our organs - us - Bones - protect - strong - make - and - .
....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Our body

Guiding elements:

(many systems - digestive - chew - energy - respiratory - breathe)



OUR SENSES

Listen and repeat.



taste
التذوق



touch
اللمس



smell
الشم




sight
البصر





hearing
السمع



eyes
العينان





ears
الأذنان



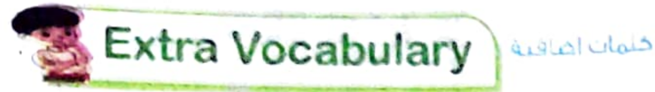
tongue
اللسان



skin
الجلد



nose
الأنف



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
sweet	حلو المذاق	Spanish	اللغة الأسبانية
deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)	savory	مالح
blind	كفيف / أعمى	combinations	مجموعات
sign language	لغة الإشارة	information	معلومات
Braille	طريقة برايل للقراءة (للمكفوفين)	complete	تام / كامل
dots	نقاط	fireworks	ألعاب نارية
letter	حرف	world	عالم
code	شفرة / رمز	difficulty	صعوبة
Arabic	اللغة العربية	versions	إصدارات
English	اللغة الإنجليزية	loud	عالي الصوت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
taste	يتذوق	tasted	touch	يلمس	touched
invent	يخترع	invented	communicate	يتواصل	communicated
work	يعمل	worked	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	hear	يسمع	heard
smell	يشم	smelt	feel	يشعر	felt
understand	يفهم	understood	speak	يتحدث	spoke

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
think about	يفكر في	What kind of ....?	نوع ...... ؟
different from	مختلف عن	find out	يعرف / يكتشف
all the time	طوال الوقت	look at	ينظر إلى
lots of	كثير من	feel soft	ملمس ناعم

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Read the text. How do we use our different senses?



We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

نحن نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لتساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا. نحن نستخدم أعيننا لنرى وأذننا لنسمع. نحن نشم بأنفنا ونتذوق بلساننا ويمكننا أن نشعر عن طريق بشرتنا (جلدنا).

Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

فكر أين أنت الآن. ماذا يمكنك أن ترى؟ ماذا يمكنك أن تسمع؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت وتستقبل الكثير من المعلومات.

Look at the photo. What can the child smell? What do you think he can feel? What kind of food do you enjoy? Some foods are sweet, and some are savory. We taste lots of different kinds of food every day.

انظر إلى الصورة. ماذا يستطيع الطفل أن يشم؟ بماذا يشعر في رأيك؟ أي نوع من الطعام تستمتع به؟ بعض الأطعمة حلوة المذاق وبعضها مالح. نحن نتذوق الكثير من أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة كل يوم.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world – sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

بعض الناس لا يستطيعون أن يروا أو يسمعوا، لذلك يكون لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل. الصم أو من لديهم صعوبة في السمع يمكنهم تعلم لغة الإشارة. إنها لغة كاملة مثل اللغة الإنجليزية أو العربية أو الإسبانية، ويوجد منها إصدارات مختلفة حول العالم - لغة الإشارة في مصر مختلفة عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

طريقة برايل هي شفرة يمكن أن يستخدمها الأشخاص المكفوفين أو من لديهم صعوبة في البصر للقراءة، فهذه اللغة لها تركيبات مختلفة من النقاط. يمكن أن تكون حرفًا أو رقمًا أو علامة ترقيم أو كلمة. يمكن للشخص الذي يقرأ أن يلمس النقاط ليعرف معناها. قام باختراع طريقة برايل «لويس برايل».

Capital letters

We use capital letters:

نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة:

1. **At the beginning of the sentence.** ١) في بداية الجملة.

   We use our senses every day.

2. **With names of languages.** ٢) مع أسماء اللغات.

   English , Arabic , Spanish

3. **With names of countries and cities.** ٣) مع أسماء الدول والمدن.

   Egypt , USA , Cairo , Luxor

4. **With names of persons.** ٤) مع أسماء الأشخاص.

   Louis Braille

5. **The pronoun (I)** ٥) الضمير (I)

   I'm happy.

6. **Days of the week** ٦) مع أيام الأسبوع

   Saturday , Monday

7. **Months of the year** ٧) مع شهور السنة

   August , February

 **Rewrite these sentences with capital letters.**

1. i live in aswan in egypt.

   ....

2. yusuf speaks arabic and english.

   ....

3. my teacher is called Mrs heba.

   ....

Help your child identify when to use capital letters.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... every day.
   a) senses b) books c) cups d) glasses
2. We use our .... to see.
   a) nose b) mouth c) tongue d) eyes
3. We .... with our nose.
   a) smell b) taste c) kick d) touch
4. We can feel with our ....
   a) skin b) tongue c) eyes d) ears

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

combinations - blind - touch - write

Braille is a code which people who are 1)................ or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different 2)................ of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can 3)................ the dots to find out what they mean.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We have five senses. We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. There are different versions of sign language around the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is our ....
   a) eyes b) nose c) teeth d) senses

2. .... people can't hear.

   a) Deaf b) Mad c) Blind d) Sad

3. We taste with our ....

   a) [illegible] b) tongue c) ears d) skin

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many senses do we have?

....

5. How do deaf people communicate?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... to see.

   a) nose b) eyes c) mouth d) hand

2. We can .... with our ears.

   a) hear b) touch c) feel d) smell

3. They smell with their ....

   a) mouth b) ear c) nose d) eyes

4. We can taste with our ....

   a) skin b) nose c) tongue d) finger

5. I can feel with my ....

   a) skin b) nose c) hair d) tongue

6. Blind people can't ....

   a) hear b) smell c) feel d) see

7. People who are deaf use .... language.

   a) Arabic b) English c) picture d) sign

8. We have .... senses and we use them every day.

   a) four b) five c) seven d) eight

9. Braille is a .... which people who are blind can use.

   a) man b) sport c) kind d) code

10. "Spanish" is a ....

   a) sport b) language c) place d) food

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use - eyes - see - We - our - to - .

....

2. can - What - hear - you - ?

....

3. can - skin - We - feel - with - our - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(see - hear - smell - touch)

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

1. mr gamal prefers arabic music to african music.

....

2. louis braille invented the braille code.

....

3. mrs azza reads braille because she can't see well.

....

2. .... people can't hear.

a) Deaf b) Mad c) Blind d) Sad

3. We taste with our ....

a) [illegible] b) tongue c) ears d) skin

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many senses do we have?

....

5. How do deaf people communicate?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... to see.

a) nose b) eyes c) mouth d) hand

2. We can .... with our ears.

a) hear b) touch c) feel d) smell

3. They smell with their ....

a) mouth b) ear c) nose d) eyes

4. We can taste with our ....

a) skin b) nose c) tongue d) finger

5. I can feel with my ....

a) skin b) nose c) hair d) tongue

6. Blind people can't ....

a) hear b) smell c) feel d) see

7. People who are deaf use .... language.

a) Arabic b) English c) picture d) sign

8. We have .... senses and we use them every day.

a) four b) five c) seven d) eight

9. Braille is a .... which people who are blind can use.

a) man b) sport c) kind d) code

10. "Spanish" is a ....

a) sport b) language c) place d) food

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3)

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. use - eyes - see - We - our - to - .

   ....

2. can - What - hear - you - ?

   ....

3. can - skin - We - feel - with - our - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(see - hear - smell - touch)

....

....

....

....

....

7 Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

1. mr gamal prefers arabic music to african music.

   ....

2. louis braille invented the braille code.

   ....

3. mrs azza reads braille because she can't see well.

   ....

Lesson (3)

LANGUAGE

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

lounge	صالة / غرفة الجلوس	right hemisphere	الشق الأيمن (من المخ)
disappointed	خائب الأمل / محبط	left hemisphere	الشق الأيسر (من المخ)
memory	ذاكرة	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
brain	المخ	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
activity	نشاط	brain stem	جذع المخ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

creative	مُبدع / مُبتكر	balance	توازن
cookery	فن الطبخ	paper	ورق
math	الرياضيات	choices	اختيارات
science	العلوم	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
art	الرسم	movement	حركة
solving problems	حل المشاكل	artistic	ذو حس فني
tired	مُتْعَب	light bulb	مصباح كهربي
thoughts	أفكار		

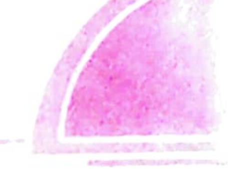
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
tidy	يرتب	tidied	smile	يبتسم	smiled
practice	يمارس	practiced	paint	يلون	painted
control	يتحكم	controlled	move	يتحرك	moved
join	يربط	joined	remember	يتذكر	remembered
answer	يجيب	answered			

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Irregular verbs الأفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	do	يفعل	did
draw	يرسم	drew	go	يذهب	went
take	يأخذ	took	make	يصنع	made
run	يجري	ran	know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	after	بعد
Let's + inf.	هيا بنا	before	قبل
make choices	يختار	do something	يفعل شيئًا
look disappointed	يبدو محبطًا	practice football	يمارس كرة القدم
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	paint a picture	يلون صورة
do drawing	يرسم	I think	أعتقد

Did you know?

There are two halves, or **hemispheres**, in our brain. The **left hemisphere** is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the **right hemisphere** in creative activities such as art and music.

هناك نصفين، أو شقي كرة، في دماغنا. الشق الأيسر مهم للرياضيات والعلوم وحل المشكلات. نحن نستخدم الشق الأيمن في الأنشطة الإبداعية مثل الفن والموسيقى.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

Read the story.

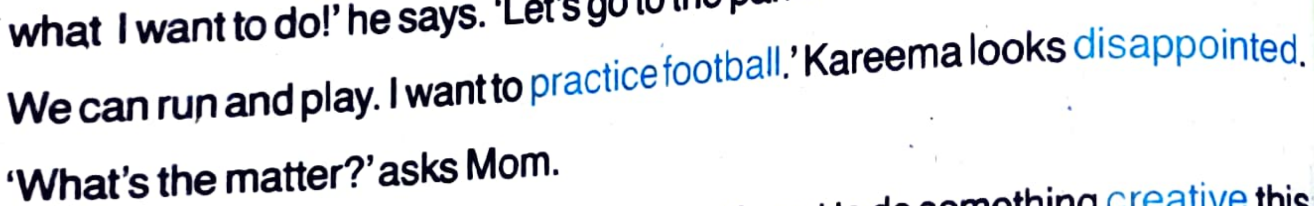
What do Adam and Kareema like to do?

ماذا يحب آدم وكريمة أن يفعلا؟

'It is Saturday, so there's no school. What are we doing today, Mom?' asks Kareema.

'We have to tidy the lounge. Then you can choose what you want to do,' says Mom.

Kareema's brother Adam smiles. 'I know what I want to do!' he says. 'Let's go to the park. We can run and play. I want to practice football.' Kareema looks disappointed.

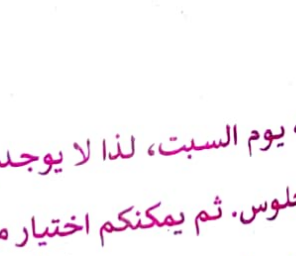


'What's the matter?' asks Mom.

'I like the park,' Kareema answers. 'But I want to do something creative this afternoon. I would like to draw or paint a picture. Adam goes to the park every week.'

'Kareema always does drawing!' says Adam.

Mom smiles. 'I think we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can draw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge.'



إنه يوم السبت، لذا لا يوجد يوم دراسي. تسأل كريمة : «ماذا سنفعل اليوم يا أمي؟» تقول الأم : «علينا أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس. ثم يمكنكم اختيار ما تريدون القيام به.» يبتسم آدم شقيق كريمة ويقول «أعرف ما أريد أن أفعله اليوم! هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة، يمكننا الجري واللعب. أريد أن أمارس كرة القدم.» تبدو كريمة محبطة. تسأل الأم : «ما الأمر؟» تجيب كريمة: «أنا أحب الحديقة، ولكنني أريد أن أفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا وقت الظهيرة هذا اليوم. أود أن أرسم أو ألون صورة. يذهب آدم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع». يقول آدم : «كريمة ترسم دائمًا!» تبتسم الأم وتقول «أعتقد أنه يمكننا جميعًا أن نكون سعداء اليوم. هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة. يمكننا اللعب هناك ويمكننا إحضار أقلام الرصاص والورق معنا، ويمكنك الرسم في الحديقة أيضًا. لكن أولًا دعونا نرتب غرفة الجلوس.»

Lesson (3)

Our brain

the left hemisphere

the right hemisphere

Brain

1- Our brain controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make.

يتحكم مخنا في كيفية الحركة لدينا وما نتذكره والإختيارات التي نقوم بها.

2- The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.

المناطق الرئيسية الثلاث في الدماغ هي المخ والمخيخ وجذع الدماغ وكلهم لهم وظائف هامة.

3- The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak and our memories. The cerebellum controls movements and balance.

منطقة المخ تتحكم في مشاعرنا وأفكارنا وكيف نتحدث وذكرياتنا. منطقة المخيخ تتحكم في الحركة والتوازن.

4- The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.

يربط جذع المخ الجزئين معًا.

5- The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body.

الشق الأيسر من المخ يتحكم في الجانب الأيمن من الجسم.

6- The right hemisphere of the brain controls the left side of the body.

الشق الأيمن من المخ يتحكم في الجانب الأيسر من الجسم.

7- More people use their right hand to write with.

يستخدم كثير من الناس يدهم اليمنى في الكتابة.

8- Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

بعض الناس عسر الايدي (يستخدمون اليد اليسرى) مبدعين وفنانين (لديهم حس ابداعي وفني).

9- The left hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.

الشق الأيسر من المخ هام في الحساب والعلوم وحل المشكلات.

10- We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

نستخدم الشق الأيمن في الأنشطة الإبداعية مثل الرسم والموسيقى.

Fact file

Ten Fun Brain Facts ! عشر حقائق مثيرة عن المخ !

1 - The brain is the most important organ [1] of the body.

2 - An adult brain weighs [2] about 1400 grams.

3 - About 75% of the brain is made up of water.

4 - Your brain continues [3] to grow until you're about 18 years old.

5 - Your brain uses about 20% of the oxygen and blood in your body.

6 - Information [4] travels from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour.

7 - Every minute about one liter of blood flows through the brain.

8 - While you are sleeping, your brain goes through all the memories [5] of the day.

9 - The average brain [6] has 12,000 to 60,000 thoughts a day!

10 - When you are awake, your brain makes enough electricity to power a small light bulb.

1. عضو في الجسم 2. يزن 3. يستمر 4. معلومات 5. ذكريات 6. متوسط المخ



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage

We use the present simple to talk about:

- Something that is true. شيء حقيقي.
  e.g. Cows give us milk.
- Something that happens regularly. شيء يحدث بانتظام.
  e.g. I play football every day.

Form

(I / We / You / They / Plural noun) + inf. مصدر الفعل...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He / She / It / Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Spelling Rules

- We add (s) to most verbs. نضيف (s) إلى معظم الأفعال.

walk → walks   eat → eats

- Verbs ending in (ss / sh / ch / o / x) take (es).

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss / sh / ch / o / x) يضاف لها (es).

wash → washes   watch → watches   mix → mixes

go → goes   cross → crosses

- Verbs ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (ies).

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن، نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies)

carry → carries   study → studies

- Verbs ending in (a vowel + y), we add only (s).

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك، نضيف فقط (s).

play → plays   obey → obeys

Keywords

always	دائمًا	usually	عادة
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا	every (day, week, ...)	كل (يوم ، أسبوع ، ..)
on (Mondays, Fridays, ...)			في أيام (الأثنين ، الجمعة ، .....)

e.g. Adam goes to the park every week.

e.g. Kareem always does drawing.

Note: Some verbs have special forms in the present.

بعض الأفعال لها أشكال خاصة في زمن المضارع

1 Verb to "Be"

- I ⟶ am - am not
- He / She / It / Singular noun ⟶ is - isn't
- We / You / They / Plural noun ⟶ are - aren't

- I am happy. - He is hungry. - Children are not at the park.

2 Verb to "Have"

- I / We / You / They / Plural noun ⟶ have - don't have
- He / She / It / Singular noun ⟶ has - doesn't have

- Tarek has two sisters. - I have one brother.
- He doesn't have a car.

3 Verb to "Do"

- I / We You / They / Plural noun ⟶ do - don't
- He / She / It / Singular noun ⟶ does - doesn't

- We do cookery class. - I don't do homework late.
- Ali does art class.

Help your child identify the present form of verb to be / do / have.

ساعد طفلك

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are two halves, or .... hemispheres in our brain.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
2. The .... hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.
   a) right b) left c) down d) top
3. We use the .... hemisphere in creative activities.
   a) south b) north c) right d) left
4. .... and music are creative activities.
   a) Art b) Sport c) Subject d) Hobby

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

What - tidy - go - do

Adam : What are we doing today?

Kareem : We have to 1) .... the lounge.

Adam : What do you want to 2) .... ?

Kareem : Let's go to the park.

Adam : 3) .... can we do there?

Kareem : We can run and play.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

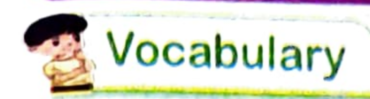
1. They .... tired.
   a) be b) is c) are d) do
2. Hana .... drawing at the art class.
   a) do b) does c) be d) are
3. I always .... TV in the evening.
   a) watch b) watched c) watches d) watching

4. Let's .... to the zoo.
   a) go   b) goes   c) went   d) going
5. What .... you doing today?
   a) am   b) is   c) are   d) do
6. At the park, children can .... tennis.
   a) draw   b) play   c) write   d) sleep
7. .... is the matter?
   a) What   b) Where   c) How   d) When
8. I like to .... a picture.
   a) write   b) read   c) paint   d) play
9. We .... no school today.
   a) is   b) are   c) have   d) were
10. Hoda .... hungry.
   a) am   b) is   c) are   d) does
11. Adam always .... to the park.
   a) go   b) went   c) going   d) goes
12. I .... two sisters.
   a) do   b) has   c) have   d) having

4 Correct the verbs in the present simple form.

1. She .... (be) hungry.
2. We .... (plays) tennis after school.
3. Tarek .... (have) two sisters.
4. Kareem .... (look) disappointed.
5. We .... (is) happy today.
6. How .... (be) you?
7. She .... (make) tea in the afternoon.
8. Ali .... (sleep) early every night.
9. Where .... (were) you today?
10. She .... (wash) the dishes every day.

Lesson (4) PARASPORTS



Vocabulary كلمات

Paralympic Games = Paralympics دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)

parasports	الألعاب الرياضية للمعاقين	bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية
competition	مسابقة / منافسة	athletes	اللاعبين الرياضيين
champion	بطل رياضي	international	دولي / عالمي
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	dedication	تكريس (الوقت)
silver medal	ميدالية فضية		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

disabilities	إعاقات	national team	الفريق القومي
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	hard work	عمل جاد
world championship	بطولة العالم	level	مستوى
Egypt Cup	كأس مصر	country	دولة
female	أنثى	opportunities	فرص
swimmer	سباح	New Zealand	دولة نيوزيلندا
runner	عدّاء / متسابق	Brazil	دولة البرازيل
race	سباق	Africa	قارة أفريقيا

sitting volleyball كرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
join	ينضم إلى	joined	win	يفوز	won
include	يتضمن	included	take part	يشترك	took part
train	يتدرب	trained	get to	يصل إلى	got to
reach	يصل إلى	reached	hold	يعقد / يقيم	held



Important expressions and prepositions

is held in	take part in — يشارك في
win a medal	like the Olympics — مثل الألعاب الأولمبية
100-meter race	do a sport — يمارس رياضة
have fun = enjoy — يستمتع	take years — يستغرق سنوات
take place = happen — يحدث	
athletes with disabilities — الرياضيون ذوو الاحتياجات الخاصة	

Read and identify.

Types of medals أنواع الميداليات



a gold medal

1st winner

(First place)



a silver medal

2nd winner

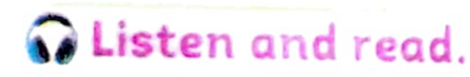
(Second place)



a bronze medal

3rd winner

(Third place)



Listen and read.



Aya Ayman Abbas

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Para-sport is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

دورة الألعاب البارالمبية هي مسابقة دولية للاعبين الرياضيين ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة مثل دورة الألعاب الأولمبية، تحدث كل أربع سنوات، وتقام في دولة مختلفة كل مرة. دورة الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة هي مجال هام من مجالات الرياضة، ومصر لديها العديد من الرياضيين الذين يشاركون في هذه المسابقات.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (4)

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

آية أيمن عباس هي بطلة في السباحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاث مرات. وكانت أول سباحة مصرية في الألعاب البارالمبية في ريو عام ٢٠١٦. فازت بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية في العديد من البلدان المختلفة.


Mostafa Fathalla

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions.

He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

مصطفى فتح الله هو عداء [illegible] انضم للمنتخب الوطني في مصر عام ٢٠٠٦، وشارك في العديد من المسابقات الدولية. [illegible] الميدالية الذهبية في بطولة العالم في نيوزيلندا.


Ahmed Abdel Fattah

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze.

He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport they enjoy.

يلعب أحمد عبدالفتاح الكرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة. شارك في دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو عام ٢٠١٦، حيث فاز الفريق بالميدالية البرونزية. لعب مع فريقه في أفريقيا والبرازيل وفازوا بالعديد من المسابقات الدولية لصالح مصر.

أن تكون رياضيا اولمبيا لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة او بطلا أولمبيا فذلك يتطلب سنوات من التفاني والعمل الجاد. لا يمكن للجميع الوصول إلى هذا المستوى، ولكن هناك العديد من الفرص للجميع للمشاركة والاستمتاع بممارسة الرياضة التي يستمتعون بها.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a .... champion.
   a) swimming b) running c) sitting volleyball d) tennis
2. Aya won the Egypt Cup .... times.
   a) four b) ten c) three d) five
3. She was the .... female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016.
   a) first b) second c) fifth d) third
4. She has .... lots of medals.
   a) lost b) won c) made d) bought

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

take - abilities - disabilities - competition

Aya : Do you like sports?

Ziad : Yes, I like sports very much.

Aya : What is the Paralympic Games?

Ziad : It's an international 1) .... for athletes with 2) ....

Aya : How often does it 3) .... place?

Ziad : Every four years.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming ....
   a) champion b) hero c) player d) swimmer
2. She has .... a gold medal.
   a) enjoyed b) won c) played d) earned
3. Have fun and .... a sport you enjoy.
   a) put b) give c) do d) take

4. He came first and won a .... medal.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) wooden
5. Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting ....
   a) tennis b) volleyball c) football d) basketball

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to take part and have fun doing a sport they enjoy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Aya b) Ahmed c) Ali d) Mona
2. Ahmed's team won a .... medal.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) platinum
3. Ahmed Abdel Fattah is a/an ....
   a) singer b) teacher c) doctor d) athlete

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Ahmed Abdel Fattah play?

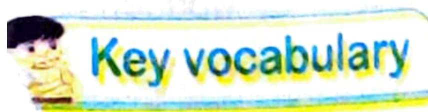
....

5. When did he take part in Rio Olympics?

....

Lessons (5 & 6)

WRITING PARAGRAPHS



كلمات رئيسية

exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	mental	عقلي
healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي	summer camp	معسكر صيفي
unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية	physical	بدني / جسدي

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

routine	نظام يومي	sugar	سكر
hard	صعب / شاق	fats	دهون
video games	ألعاب فيديو	active	نشيط
tips	نصائح	clear	واضح
especially	خصوصا	unimportant information	معلومات غير هامة
range	سلسلة / مجموعة		



تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
develop	ينمي / يطور	developed
stay	يبقى	stayed
start	يبدأ	started
summarize	يلخص	summarized
organise	ينظم	organised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose
drink	يشرب	drank
find	يجد	found
give	يعطي	gave
write	يكتب	wrote
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned

(1) What can I do? **Help your child identify these words.** ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على

Lessons (5 & 6)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as well	أيضًا
play on	يلعب على
aged	يبلغ من العمر
easy for	سهل لـ
It's fun to	إنه من الممتع أن
plan for	يخطط لـ
full of	مملوء بـ
try to	يحاول أن
a mixture of	خليط من
for lunch	لوجبة الغذاء
on hot days	في الأيام الحارة
choose for	يختار لـ
make friends	يكوِّن صداقات
It is a good idea to	إنها لفكرة جيدة أن
sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بدون حركة لفترة طويلة
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التمرينات الرياضية

Writing Tip !

1 How to choose a title for a text كيف تختار عنوانًا لنص

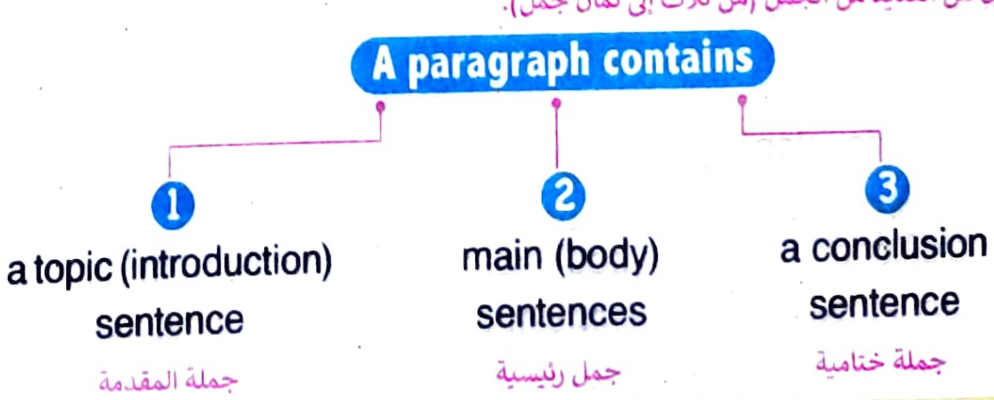
A. You need to summarize what it is about on a quick and clear way.
تحتاج إلى تلخيص موضوع النص بطريقة سريعة وواضحة.

B. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
انت لا تحتاج إلى أي معلومات إضافية أو غير هامة.

C. It's good if you can make the title funny or interesting, too.
من الجيد لو أمكنك جعل العنوان ممتعا أو شيقًا أيضًا.

2 How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

- A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences).
الفقرة تتكون من العديد من الجمل (من ثلاث إلى ثمان جمل).



- The introduction sentence introduces the topic.

تقدم جملة المقدمة الموضوع.

- The main sentences are in the middle of the paragraph.

  They give more information.

الجمل الرئيسية تكون في منتصف الفقرة وتعطي معلومات أكثر عن الموضوع.

- The conclusion sentence is last. It finishes the paragraph.

جملة الختام تكون في النهاية وتنهي الفقرة.

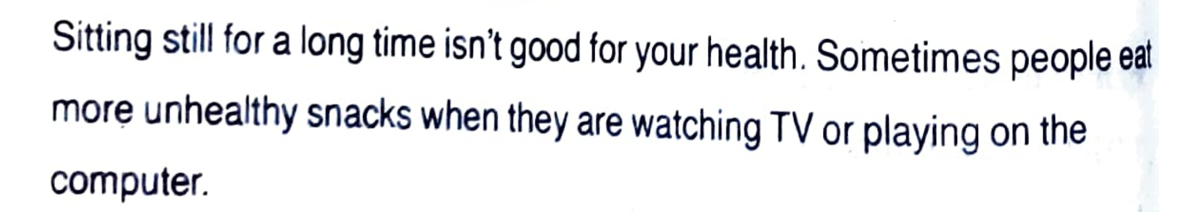
title

Unhealthy habits

introduction sentence

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well.

main sentences



Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer.

conclusion sentence

Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

Help your child identify the parts of a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أجزاء الفقرة.

Lessons (5 & 6)



Fill in the spaces with.

introduction - conclusion - main - title

1) ....

How to start an exercise routine

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

2) .... sentence

3) .... sentences

4) .... sentence

Listen and read.

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow.

نحتاج جميعا إلى تناول نظام غذائي جيد للبقاء بصحة جيدة، لكن ما هو النظام الغذائي الجيد ؟ يشتمل النظام الغذائي الجيد على الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة والكثير من الماء للشرب. يتكون مخنا من حوالي ٧٥٪ من الماء ويحتاج الماء ليعمل بشكل جيد. ينبغي أن نأكل الفاكهة الطازجة والخضراوات لأنها تحتوى على الكثير من الألياف ومليئة بالفيتامينات والمعادن. نحن بحاجة إليها لصحة البشرة والعضلات والعظام والأسنان. ينبغي أن نأكل الكثير من البروتين أيضا، لأن هذا يساعدنا على النمو.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy , but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

الأطعمة التي تحتوي على البروتين تشمل الأسماك والجبن والبيض والفول والمكسرات واللحوم.

نحن بحاجة إلى الدهون من أجل جهاز عصبي صحي. وهذا يشمل المكسرات والأسماك الزيتية والزيت والزبدة. الكربوهيدرات مثل الخبز والأرز والمكرونة تمدنا بالطاقة. يمنحنا السكر أيضا الطاقة، لكن الإفراط في تناول السكر ليس مفيدًا لنا. السكر موجود في الكيك والكعك المحلى والحلوى، لذا حاول ألا تفرط في تناولها. تناول وجبة غذائية جيدة بها الكثير من الأطعمة الطازجة المختلفة، وستكون بصحة جيدة.



Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Healthy diet

Guiding elements:

(good - fresh food - fresh fruit - vitamins - protein)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

"My body"

Our body consists of many systems. We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. Muscles are attached to our bones. We need to keep our bodies strong and healthy.

"Unhealthy habits"

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

"Physical and mental activities"

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

"Tips for a healthy diet"

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	stomach	المعدة
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	blood	الدم
tongue (taste)	اللسان (التذوق)	muscles	العضلات
nose (smell)	الأنف (الشم)	brain	المخ
ears (hearing)	الأذنان (السمع)	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
eyes (sight)	العينان (البصر)	lungs	الرئتان
skin (touch)	الجلد (اللمس)	bone	عظمة



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage **We use the present simple to talk about:**

- Something that is true.
- Something that happens regularly.

Form

(I / We / You / They / Plural noun) + inf. مصدر الفعل...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He / She / It / Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Keywords

always usually sometimes often never every (day, week, month..)

e.g. Kareema always does drawing.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

معدة	الجهاز التنفسي ....
قلب	الجهاز الهضمي ....
عظمة	هيكل عظمي ....
رئتان	دم ....
عضلة	أكسجين ....

Lesson (2)

الحواس	السمع ....
الاعضاء	البصر ....
الشم	اللسان ....
اللمس	الجلد ....
التذوق	العينان ....

Lesson (3)

الشق الأيمن (من المخ)	المخ ....
الشق الأيسر (من المخ)	ذاكرة ....
منطقة المخ	نشاط ....
منطقة المخيخ	صالة / غرفة الجلوس ....
جذع المخ	مُحبط ....

Lesson (4)

ميدالية ذهبية	دولي / عالمي ....
ميدالية برونزية	اللاعبين الرياضيين ....
ميدالية فضية	تكريس (الوقت) ....
بطل رياضي	الألعاب الرياضية للمعاقين ....
مسابقة	مستوى ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

عقلي	عادات غير صحية ....
معسكر صيفي	دهون ....
بدني / جسدى	نشيط ....
يتدرب / تدريب	نظام يومي ....
نظام غذائي صحي	ألعاب فيديو ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system when we breathe
   a) digestive   b) respiratory   c) heart   d) blood
2. We breathe in .... through our nose
   a) air   b) water   c) perfume   d) energy
3. The .... in the air is passed to the blood
   a) carbon   b) food   c) oxygen   d) water
4. Our .... pumps blood around our body
   a) lungs   b) muscle   c) heart   d) bone

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our 1) .... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our 2) ...., and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see? What can you hear? Our sense are 3) .... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It's for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about the ....
   a) Olympic Games
   b) Paralympic Games
   c) World Cup
   d) swimming competitions
2. "Takes place" means ....
   a) connects b) happens c) supports d) protects
3. Mostafa Fathallah has won many medals in the world champion in ....
   a) New Zealand b) France c) America d) Egypt

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Which races does Mostafa take part in?

....

5. Is the Olympics different from the Paralympics?

....

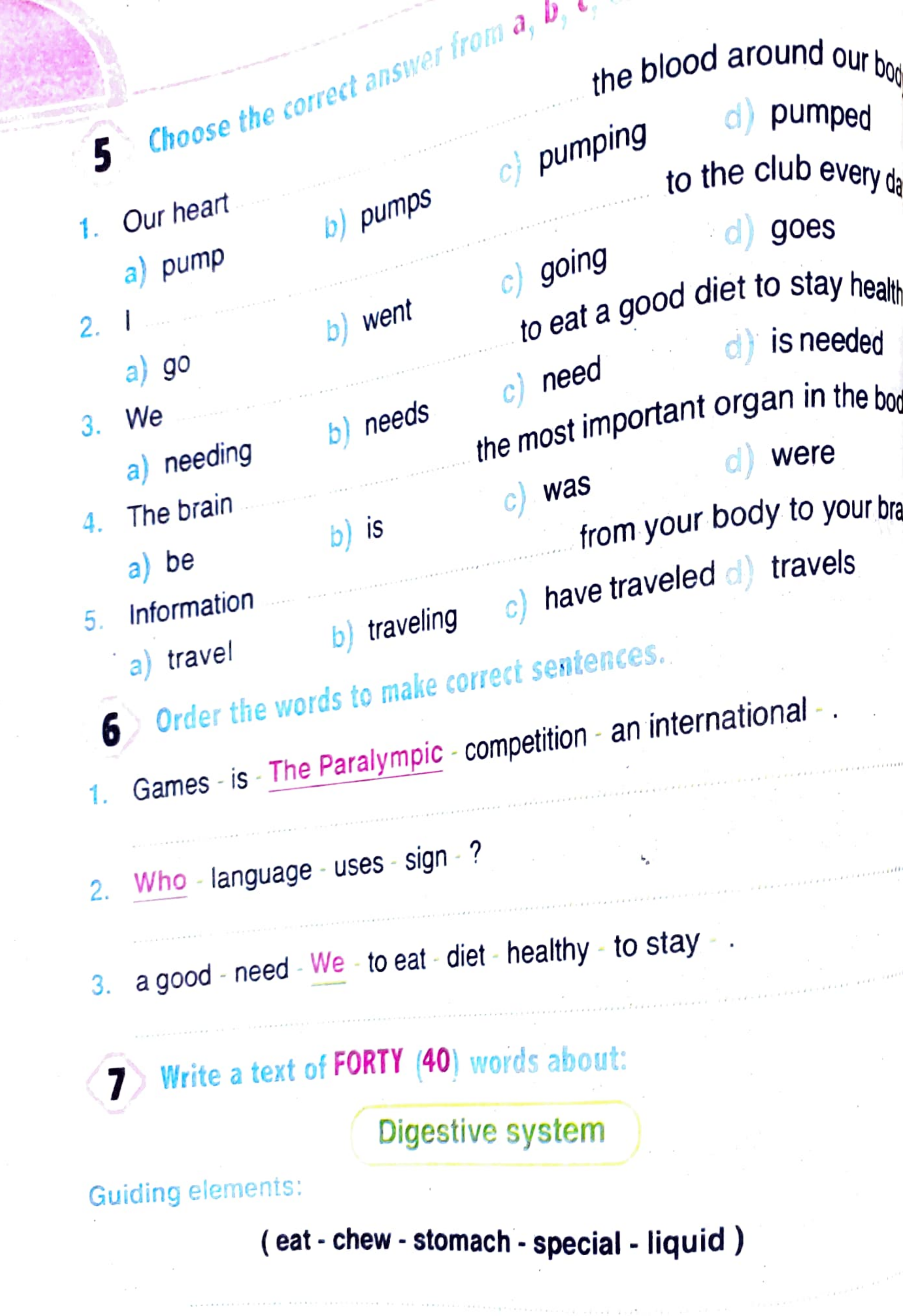
4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of holiday. ( )
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the ....
   a) engineers b) tent makers c) doctors d) writers
2. Grandpa can't .... because his eyes aren't very good.
   a) draw b) paint c) drive d) sew



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c,

1. Our heart .... the blood around our bod
   a) pump   b) pumps   c) pumping   d) pumped
2. I .... to the club every da
   a) go   b) went   c) going   d) goes
3. We .... to eat a good diet to stay health
   a) needing   b) needs   c) need   d) is needed
4. The brain .... the most important organ in the bod
   a) be   b) is   c) was   d) were
5. Information .... from your body to your bra
   a) travel   b) traveling   c) have traveled   d) travels

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Games - is - The Paralympic - competition - an international - .
   ....
2. Who - language - uses - sign - ?
   ....
3. a good - need - We - to eat - diet - healthy - to stay - .
   ....

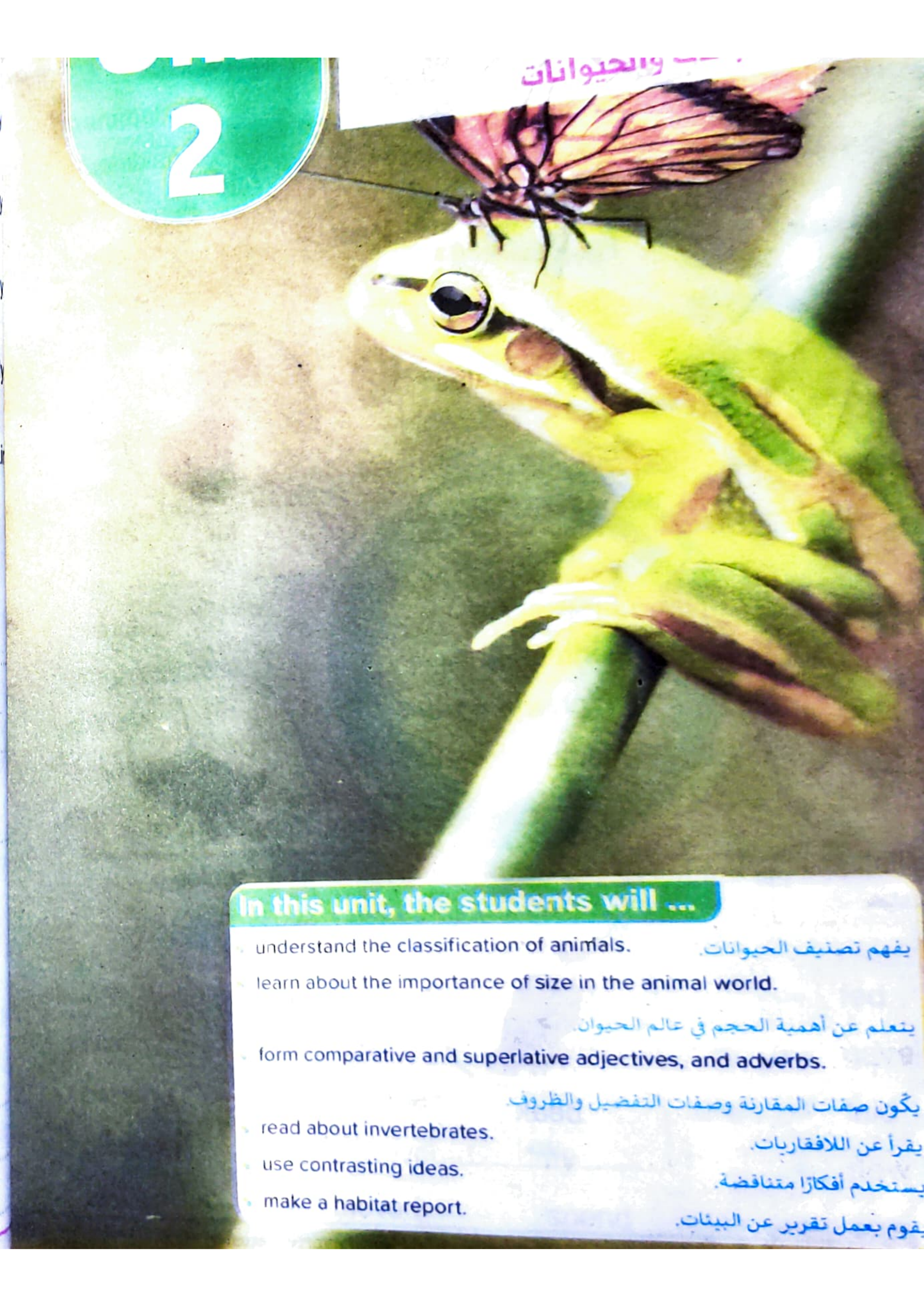
7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Digestive system

Guiding elements:

(eat - chew - stomach - special - liquid)

....
....
....



2
والحيوانات
In this unit, the students will ...
understand the classification of animals.
يفهم تصنيف الحيوانات.
learn about the importance of size in the animal world.
يتعلم عن أهمية الحجم في عالم الحيوان.
form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs.
يكون صفات المقارنة وصفات التفضيل والظروف.
read about invertebrates.
يقرأ عن اللافقاريات.
use contrasting ideas.
يستخدم أفكارًا متناقضة.
make a habitat report.
يقوم بعمل تقرير عن البيئات.

VERTEBRATES

Listen, point and say.



vertebrates
فقاريات



fins
زعانف



fur
فرو



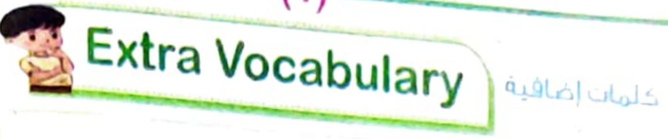
gills
خياشيم



scales
حراشف



beak
منقار



Lesson (1)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
mammals	ثدييات	reptiles	زواحف
amphibians	برمائيات	backbone	عمود فقري
birds	طيور	different	مُختلف
toads	عُلجوم (ضفدع الطين)	moist	رطب
fish	أسماك	survive	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة
whales	حيتان	habitat	موطن / بيئة
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	river	نهر
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	saltwater	ماء مالح
seal	عجل البحر / الفقمة	wetlands	أراضي رطبة
turtles	سلاحف	fresh water	ماء عذب
bat	خفاش	land	اليابسة
ostrich	نعامة	shapes	أشكال
smooth skin	جلد ناعم	feathers	ريش
except	ما عدا / باستثناء	wing	جناح
in addition	بالإضافة لذلك	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived
need	يحتاج	needed
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
discover	يكتشف	discovered
move	يتحرك	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
feed	يطعم	fed
give	يعطي	gave
lay	تضع (البيض)	laid
fly	يطير	flew
spend	يقضي	spent

Help your child identify these words.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feed with	يغذي - يطعم بـ	such as	مثل
give birth to	تلد	take in	يمتص
live on	يتغذى على / يعيش على	keep warm	يبقي دافئا
made of	مصنوع من	come onto land	يخرج إلى اليابسة

Listen and read.

Vertebrates الفقاريات



Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five different types of vertebrates.

الفقاريات هي الحيوانات التي لها عمود فقري، هناك خمسة أنواع مختلفة من الفقاريات.

Mammals الثدييات

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to heir babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

الثدييات لديها شعر أو فراء على أجسامها. وهي من ذوات الدم الحار. وترضع الثدييات صغارها اللبن ومعظمها تلد الصغار. إنها لا تبيض، يعتبر البشر من الثدييات. معظم الثدييات تعيش على اليابسة، ولكن بعضها يعيش في البحر مثل الحيتان والفقمات (عجل البحر). الخفافيش هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي يمكنها الطيران.

Reptiles الزواحف

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes that don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

الزواحف من ذوات الدم البارد. هذا يعني أن عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت في الشمس للحفاظ على دفئهم. معظم الزواحف لديها أربعة أرجل ماعدا الثعابين ليس لديها أي أرجل. ليس لديها شعر أو فراء، لديهم قشور. بالإضافة إلى أن كل الزواحف تبيض. تعيش أغلب الزواحف على اليابسة. بعض الزواحف يمكن أن تعيش في الأنهار أو البحر مثل السلاحف ولكنهم يخرجون إلى اليابسة ليضعوا البيض.

Help your child read about animals.

Lesson (1)

Amphibians

البرمائيات

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

تستطيع البرمائيات العيش على اليابسة وفي الماء. لكنها تحتاج إلى الماء أو موطن رطب للبقاء على قيد الحياة. مثل الزواحف تعتبر البرمائيات من ذوات الدم البارد و تضع البيض ومع ذلك، فإن البرمائيات، مثل الضفادع وضفادع الطين، تضع بيضها في الماء. ولديها بشرة ناعمة وليس قشور. ويمكنها استنشاق الأكسجين من خلال جلدها ورئتيها.

Fish

الأسماك

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

تعيش الأسماك في الماء وتستنشق الأكسجين من خلال خياشيمها، لا يمكنها تنفس الهواء. تعد الأسماك من ذوات الدم البارد كما أنها تبيض. والأسماك لديها قشور، ويستخدمون الزعانف في الحركة. يوجد الآلاف من الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك في كل البيئات المائية - المياه المالحة و المياه العذبة والأراضي الرطبة.

Birds

الطيور

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks , which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

الطيور من ذوات الدم الحار لكن ليس لديها فراء ولا شعر. فجميع الطيور لديها ريش وجميعها لديها أجنحة. الطيور تضع البيض الذي يكون صلبًا. معظم الطيور تستطيع الطيران، لكن بعضها لا يستطيع. لدى الطيور مناقير مصنوعة من العظام، لدى الطيور مناقير ذات أشكال مختلفة لأنها تأكل أطعمة مختلفة، بعض الطيور تأكل اللحوم وبعضها تأكل المكسرات وبعضها تأكل البذور.

Help your child read about animals.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Reptiles are ....
   a) cold-blooded b) warm-blooded c) hot-blooded d) cool-blooded
2. They have to spend time in the ....
   a) moon b) air c) sun d) water
3. Most reptiles have .... legs.
   a) ten b) five c) four d) six
4. They have ....
   a) scales b) fur c) fin d) hair

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

eggs - beaks - feathers - noses

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have 1) ...., and they all have wings. Birds lay 2) .... which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have 3) ...., which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are .... different types of vertebrates.
   a) four b) three c) five d) seven
2. Vertebrates are animals with a ....
   a) backbone b) fin c) gill d) beak
3. Mammals are ....-blooded.
   a) cold b) warm c) hot d) cool
4. .... are the only mammals that can fly.
   a) Elephants b) Cats c) Bats d) Rats
5. .... are cold-blooded.
   a) Birds b) Mammals c) Reptiles d) Lions

6. Most reptiles have .... legs.
   a) three   b) ten   c) four   d) five
7. Amphibians need water or a .... habitat to survive.
   a) dry   b) moist   c) ice   d) hot
8. Amphibians have .... skin.
   a) soft   b) hard   c) tough   d) smooth
9. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a) tails   b) bills   c) gills   d) hills
10. Birds have ....
   a) beaks   b) leaves   c) fur   d) hair

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) birds   b) sea animals   c) whales   d) mammals
2. Mammals .... eggs.
   a) give   b) lay   c) don't lay   d) fly
3. Mammals feed their babies with ....
   a) juice   b) water   c) milk   d) oil

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where do most mammals live?

....

5. What are the only mammals that can fly?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. eggs - lay - Amphibians - water - in - .

....

2. types - are - There - five - vertebrates - of - .

....

3. are - Mammals - warm-blooded - .

....

4. are - animals - Vertebrates - a backbone - with - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Fish

Guiding elements:

(water - gills - cold-blooded - scales - fins)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (2) LANGUAGE



Vocabulary كلمات

enormous	ضخم	Earth	كوكب الأرض
tiny	صغير جدا	natural world	العالم الطبيعي
the blue whale	الحوت الأزرق	African elephant	الفيل الأفريقي
whale shark	سمكة قرش الحوت	Asian elephant	الفيل الآسيوي

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

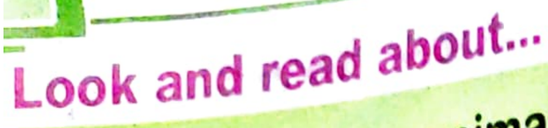
ostrich	نعامة	quiet	هادئ
leopard	فهد	rainforests	غابات استوائية
scientist	عالم	frog	ضفدع
chameleon	حرباء	anaconda	ثعبان الأناكوندا
bee hummingbird	طائر طنان النحل	size	حجم
discover	يكتشف	strong	قوي
Cuba	دولة كوبا	sloth	دب الكسلان
Madagascar	دولة مدغشقر	howler monkey	قرد العواء
Papua New Guinea	مدينة بابوا (غينيا) الحديثة	narwhal	حريش البحر - كركدن البحر - الحوت ذو الناب
cheetah	الفهد الصياد		



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It can be up to 30 meters long.	قد يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ متر.
at just 30 mm long	بطول ٣٠ مليمتر فقط
extremely strong	قوي للغاية
the same size	نفس الحجم
on Earth	على الأرض
at about 12 meters long	بطول حوالي ١٢ متر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Look and read about...

Size in the animal world الحجم في عالم الحيوان

Big and small

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones!
The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.

في عالم الطبيعة، يوجد حيوانات ضخمة وأخرى صغيرة جدًا.
أكبر حيوان على اليابسة من الثدييات وهو الفيل الأفريقي. الفيل الأفريقي أكبر من الفيل الآسيوي.

The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!



أكبر حيوان في العالم هو أيضًا من الثدييات ولكن يعيش في البحر. إنه الحوت الأزرق ويمكن أن يصل طوله إلى ٣٠ مترًا. في الحقيقة أنهما أكبر الحيوانات التي عاشت على كوكب الأرض.

The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

سمكة القرش الحوت هي أكبر سمكة في العالم. إنها أصغر من الحوت الأزرق بطول حوالي ١٢ مترًا.

The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba.
The biggest bird is the ostrich. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

أصغر طائر هو طنان النحل والذي يبلغ طوله ٥,٥ سم. إنه يعيش في دولة كوبا.
إن أكبر طائر هو النعامة والتي يصل طولها إلى ٢,٥ مترًا ! طيور النعام أسرع من الفهود، لكنها لا تستطيع الطيران.

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long!
But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

في عام ٢٠١٢، اكتشف العلماء حرباء صغيرة جدًا في دولة مدغشقر. يعتقد الناس أنها أصغر الزواحف في العالم حيث يبلغ طولها ٣٠ ملليمتر فقط. ولكن حتى ذلك هي أكبر من ضفدع في مدينة بابوا بغينيا الحديثة حيث يبلغ طوله ٧ ملليمتر لذا هو أصغر حيوان فقاري اكتشفناه.

... read about sizes in the animal world.
ساعد طفلك ...

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives
صفات المقارنة



الاستخدام

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.**

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + er + than.

 faster than → 

 smaller than → 

e.g. The cheetah is faster than the ostrich.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.



1 Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) إلى الصفة.

 nicer than → 

e.g. The fish is nicer than the ostrich.

2 Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.



bigger than



e.g. The elephant is bigger than the ostrich.

3 Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول الحرف y إلى i ونضيف er.



heavier than



e.g. The blue whale is heavier than the elephant.

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.**

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة.



Form التكوين

the + adj صفة + est .

small → the smallest

e.g. The ant is the smallest.



Help your child use superlatives.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

Spelling rules

1 Adjectives ending in (- e), only add (-st).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (-st) فقط.

nice → the nicest

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the nicest.

2 Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3 Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوق بحرف ساكن نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest sea animal.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... animal on land is a mammal.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small
2. The ostrich is faster .... the leopard.
   a) then b) than c) that d) those
3. The whale shark is the .... fish in the world.
   a) biggest b) bigger c) fat d) big
4. The chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a) big b) small c) smaller d) smallest

Help your child use superlatives.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The mouse is .... than the cat.
   a) small b) the smallest c) smallest d) smaller
2. The blue whale is .... than the whale shark.
   a) the biggest b) biggest c) big d) bigger
3. Ants are .... than humans.
   a) strong b) the strongest c) stronger d) strongest
4. The ostrich is .... than the bee hummingbird.
   a) the biggest b) big c) bigger d) biggest
5. The frog is smaller .... the cat.
   a) those b) then c) that d) than
6. Leopards aren't .... than ostriches.
   a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) the fastest
7. The ostrich is the .... bird.
   a) biggest b) the biggest c) bigger d) big
8. .... vertebrate is a frog in Papua New Gunea.
   a) The smallest b) Small c) Smaller d) The small
9. Leopards are .... than ostriches.
   a) slow b) the slowest c) slower d) slowest
10. The whale is .... than the shark.
    a) long b) the longest c) longest d) longer
11. I'm .... than my brother.
    a) tall b) the tallest c) taller d) tallest
12. Is cheetah .... animal on land?
    a) fast b) the fastest c) faster d) fastest



2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - bird - The ostrich - the world - the biggest - in - .

....

2. humans - stronger - Ants - than - are - .

....

3. biggest - The blue - is - whale - the - animal - .

....

4. the leopard - faster - The ostrich - is - than - .

....

3 Write correct sentences.

1. Leopards / be / large / than / cheetahs.

....

2. A bee hummingbird / be / small / bird / in the world.

....

3. Ants / be / strong / than / humans.

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

moon - Earth - elephant - whale

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African 1) .... The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue 2) .... , and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on 3) .... !

Lesson (3) INVERTEBRATES

Listen, point and say.



jellyfish
قنديل البحر



dragonfly
يعسوب



snail
حلزون / قوقع



octopus
أخطبوط



squid
حبار



crab
سرطان البحر



insects
حشرات



grasshopper
جرادة



spider
عنكبوت



Definitions تعريفات

Vertebrates	are animals with a backbone
Invertebrates	are animals without a backbone

الفقاريات هي حيوانات لها عمود فقري.

اللافقاريات هي حيوانات ليس لها عمود فقري.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

information	معلومات	enough	كافٍ
shell	صَدَفة - قوقعة	amazing	مذهل
research	بحث	giant	ضخم - عملاق
sea star	نجمة البحر	atlas moth	حشرة عثّة الأطلس
hard	صلب	arachnid	العنكبوتيات - فصيلة العناكب
protection	حماية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed	know	يعرف	knew
move	يتحرك	moved	write	يكتب	wrote
call	ينادي - يسمي	called	find out	يكتشف	found out
finish	ينهي - ينتهي	finished	choose	يختار	chose
protect	يحمي	protected	fly	يطير	flew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find out	يكتشف	up to	يصل إلى
write about	يكتب عن	in water	في الماء
on the internet	على الإنترنت	on land	على اليابسة
more than	أكثر من	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة
Well done!	أحسنت!	soft bodies	أجسام طرية

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



What does Sami find out? ماذا يكتشف سامي؟

'Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!' said Sami sadly. I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose.'

'Why don't you write about invertebrates?' asked Sami's dad. 'More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates.'

'Good idea!' said Sami. 'Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?'

'Of course,' said Dad.

'Oh wow!' said Sami. I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.' 'Do you have enough information for your project?' laughed Dad.

'Oh yes!' said Sami. 'Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast.

Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter! Did you know that the spider is not an insect? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.

'Well done!' said Dad. 'Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please?'

قال سامي بحزن «يا أبي، أنا لا أعرف ماذا أكتب لمشروعي الدراسي! يجب أن أبحث عن بعض الحيوانات، لكن أنا لا أعرف أي الحيوانات أختار.» سأل والد سامي «لماذا لا تكتب عن اللافقريات؟ أكثر من ٩٠٪ من الحيوانات لافقريات». قال سامي «فكرة جيدة!» «هل يمكنني البحث على شبكة الإنترنت بسرعة لإيجاد المعلومات من فضلك؟» قال الأب «بالطبع». قال سامي «أوه، واو! لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات! اللافقريات من ذوات الدم البارد. يعيشون على الأرض وفي المياه. بعض اللافقريات مثل الكابوريا، لديها قوقعة صلبة للحماية. آخرون، مثل قنديل البحر، لديها أجسام طرية. بعض اللافقريات تستطيع السباحة بشكل جيد للغاية مثل الأخطبوط والحبار». ضحك الأب وقال «هل لديك معلومات كافية لمشروعك؟ قال سامي «أوه، نعم! انتظر، لقد وجدت المزيد من المعلومات! بعض اللافقريات مثل القواقع لديها أصداف صلبة و تتحرك ببطء شديد. الآخرين أسرع منها. يمكن أن يطير اليعسوب بسرعة كبيرة. الحشرات هي أيضا من اللافقريات لديهم ستة أرجل. أعتقد أن حشرة الجراد أكثر حشرة مذهلة. يمكنهم أن يقفزوا أكثر من مترا هل تعرف أن العنكبوت ليس حشرة. له ثمانية أرجل ويسمى عنكبوتي، يمكنه التحرك سريعا جدا.» قال الأب «أحسنت!» «هل انتهيت من البحث؟ هل يمكنني استعادة هاتفي المحمول الآن، من فضلك؟»

Lesson (3)

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb. It comes after the verb.

الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. Snails move slowly.

Form التكوين

لتكوين الظرف، نضيف (ly) إلى الصفة.

adj صفة + ly

slow بطيء ——— slowly ببطء

sad حزين ——— sadly بحزن

Note:

- If the adjective ends in (a consonant + y), change the "y" into "i" and add "ly".

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف "y" مسبوقا بحرف ساكن، فإننا نستبدل الحرف "y" بـ "i" ثم نضيف "ly".

easy سهل ——— easily بسهولة

- Some adjectives are irregular.

بعض الظروف غير منتظمة.

good جيد ——— well بشكل جيد

fast سريع ——— fast بسرعة

e.g. He swims very well.

e.g. He can run fast.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some invertebrates can swim very ....

   a) well   b) bad   c) good   d) happy

2. Some invertebrates, such as snails, move very ....

   a) slow   b) quick   c) quickness   d) slowly

3. Dragonflies can fly very ....

   a) quick   b) fast   c) slow   d) good

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Arachnids - cold-blooded - sea - swim

Invertebrates don't have backbones. They are 1) .... The live in the sea and some live on land. Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells. Some invertebrates can 2) .... and some can walk 3) .... are not insects. They have 8 legs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some invertebrates have a hard shell for ....
   a) project b) protection c) research d) life
2. The jellyfish are ....
   a) vertebrates b) invertebrates c) birds d) arachnids
3. Vertebrates are animals with a ....
   a) backbone b) bone c) wing d) foot
4. .... are arachnids
   a) Elephants b) Octopuses c) Snails d) Spiders
5. The squid can swim very ....
   a) slow b) quick c) bad d) fast
6. Some invertebrates move very .... ,like snails
   a) quick b) long c) slow d) slowly
7. The spider can move very ....
   a) good b) slow c) quick d) quickly
8. "I'm sorry." My brother said ....
   a) sad b) happy c) sadly d) bad
9. I speak English ....
   a) good b) bad c) slow d) well
10. Jellyfish have .... bodies
    a) hard b) fast c) soft d) slow



Read the following text and answer the questions.

More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates. They are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates have hard shells. Others have soft bodies. Octopuses and squids can swim very fast. Snails can swim slowly. Dragonflies fly very well. Grasshoppers can jump high. Spiders can move quickly.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) fish b) invertebrates c) birds d) vertebrates
2. About .... of animals are invertebrates.
   a) 60% b) 90% c) 80% d) 70%
3. The underlined word "fast" is the opposite of ....
   a) slow b) quick c) good d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where do invertebrates live?

....

5. Which invertebrates can fly?

....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Invertebrates

Guiding elements:

(backbone - cold-blooded - land - water)

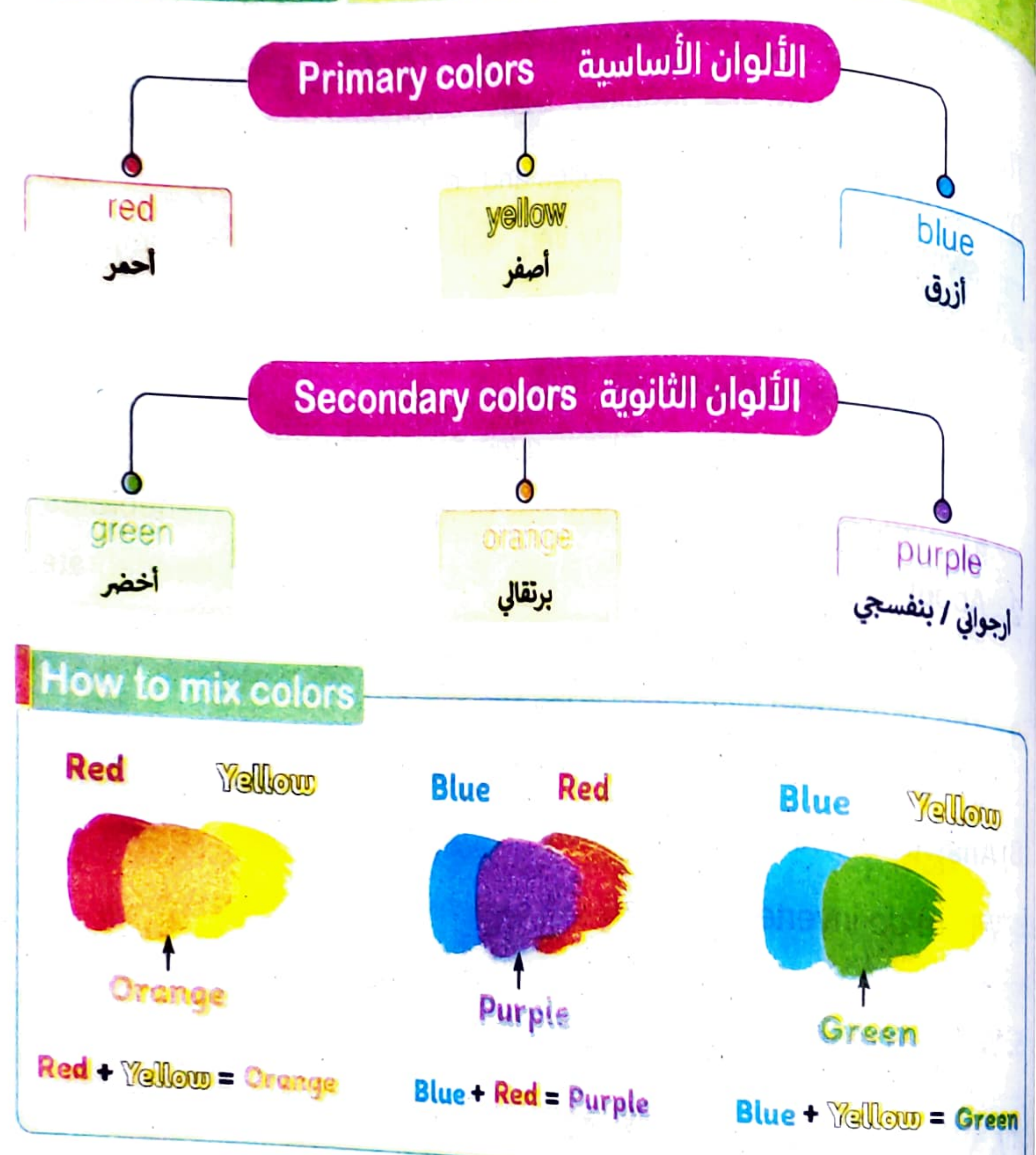
....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) CLIL: ART



Tip !

- Warm colors remind you of heat and sunshine. They're red, orange and yellow.

الألوان الحارة (الصارخة) تذكرك بالحرارة وشروق الشمس. وهي الأحمر والبرتقالي والأصفر.

- Cold colors give you the feeling of coolness. They're green, blue and purple.

الألوان الباردة تعطيك الشعور بالهدوء والراحة وهي الأخضر والأزرق والبنفسجي.

Help your child identify colors.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الألوان.

Lesson (4)

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

dark colors	الألوان الغامقة (الداكنة)	shade	درجة (اللون)
light colors	الألوان الفاتحة	prey	فريسة
warm colors	الألوان الحارة	predator	حيوان مُفترس
cold colors	الألوان الباردة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
bright colors	الألوان البرّاقة (اللامعة)	poisonous	سام
types	أنواع	warning	تحذير
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	interesting	شيق - ممتع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
mix	يخلط	mixed
carry	يحمل	carried
hunt	يصطاد	hunted
attract	يجذب	attracted
reproduce	يتكاثر	reproduced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
eat	يأكل	ate
catch	يمسك - يصطاد	caught
hide	يختبئ	hid
be	يكون	was - were



Definitions تعريفات

predator مفترس	the animal that hunts and eats other animals هو الحيوان الذي يقوم باصطياد وأكل الحيوانات الأخرى
prey فريسة	the animal that is caught and eaten هو الحيوان الذي يتم صيده وأكله

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look, read and answer.

Why do flowers have bright colors?

لماذا تحتوي الزهور على ألوان زاهية؟

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants.
Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.



يعتقد العلماء أن هناك ما يقرب من ٤٠٠ ألف نوع من النباتات. معظمها يحتوي على أزهار لها ألوان عديدة ومختلفة. تجذب الأزهار زاهية اللون الحشرات التي تقوم بنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى أخرى. وهذا يساعد الزهور على التكاثر.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it darker and adding white makes it lighter.

الألوان الأساسية هي الأحمر، والأصفر والأزرق، لا يمكننا صنع هذه الألوان بمزج ألوان أخرى.. نكوِّن ألوانًا ثانوية عن طريقة مزج الألوان الأساسية الثلاثة بكميات مختلفة. يمكننا تكوين اللون الأخضر والبرتقالي والبنفسجي وكل الدرجات بينها. على سبيل المثال يمكننا أن نخلط الأحمر والأصفر لتكوين البرتقالي. الألوان الثانوية يمكن تكوينها عن طريق خلط الألوان الأساسية القريبة منها على عجلة الألوان. إضافة الأسود إلى أي لون يجعله داكنًا وإضافة الأبيض يجعله فاتحًا.

Lesson (4)

Answer the following questions.

1. What are the primary colors?

....

2. How can we make secondary colors?

....

3. How do you make colors darker?

....

Look, read and answer.



There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish.

In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك أن تراها تحت سطح البحر! فبعض الأسماك لها ألوان زاهية جدًا وكذلك بعض النباتات. فالشعاب المرجانية ذات الألوان الزاهية يمكن أن تساعد الأسماك في الاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة. فالمرجان لامع جدًا وله ألوان مختلفة لذلك يمكن للأسماك الاختباء من الأسماك الأكبر حجمًا. بالإضافة إلى أن العديد من الحيوانات المفترسة لا تأكل الفرائس ذات الألوان الزاهية. ويمكن أن تكون الألوان الزاهية تحذيرًا من أن ذلك الحيوان سام.

Choose the correct answer.

1. A (prey - predator) is an animal that is caught and eaten.
2. A (predator - prey) is an animal that hunts and eats other animals.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... colors are red, yellow and blue.
   a) Secondary b) Primary c) Secondly d) Coral
2. We make .... colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts.
   a) Coral b) Secondly c) Primary d) Secondary
3. We can mix red and yellow to make ....
   a) black b) green c) orange d) white
4. Adding black to a color makes it ....
   a) lighter b) darker c) greener d) heavier

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We mix red and .... to make orange.
   a) blue b) yellow c) green d) purple
2. .... is a primary color.
   a) Red b) Purple c) Green d) Orange
3. .... is a secondary color.
   a) Green b) Red c) Yellow d) Blue
4. Adding .... to a color makes it lighter.
   a) black b) blue c) white d) red
5. Adding black to a color makes it ....
   a) colder b) lighter c) smaller d) darker
6. Lions and tigers are ....
   a) predators b) fishermen c) birds d) reptiles
7. Cheetahs hunt their .... and eat them.
   a) prays b) preys c) predators d) meat

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. coral - very - The - is - reef - bright - .
   ....
2. poisonous - are - Some - animals - .
   ....
3. yellow - make - Red - and - orange - .
   ....
4. and - eat - Predators - preys - catch - .
   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea. Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about life ....
   a) on the mountain
   b) underground
   c) under the sea
   d) on the moon
2. Bright colors can help fish to hide from ....
   a) lions
   b) predators
   c) cats
   d) snakes
3. The underlined word "bigger" is the opposite of ....
   a) taller
   b) smaller
   c) heavier
   d) faster

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What can we see under the sea?
   ....
5. Are the coral reefs brightly colored?
   ....



Vocabulary كلمات

water lily	الزنبق المائي	macro-habitat	(بيئة - موطن) كبير
advantages	مميزات	micro-habitat	(بيئة - موطن) صغير
disadvantages	عيوب	echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

soil	تربة زراعية	lake	بحيرة
bottom	قاع	surface	سطح
area	مساحة	stem	ساق نبات
roots	جذور	flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة
endangered	مهدد بالخطر		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
cover	يغطي	covered
pollinate	يلقح	pollinated
reach	يصل إلى	reached

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع - يجعل	made
grow	ينمو	grew
spread	ينتشر	spread

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

reach down to	يصل لأسفل إلى	look pretty	يبدو جميلًا
make it difficult for	يجعلها صعبة لـ	on the top of	على قمة
on the surface of the ...	على سطح ...	the bottom of	قاع

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Writing Tip !

Linking words & phrases

You can use these words/phrases to link the sentences and ideas in your paragraph:

يمكنك أن تستخدم هذه الكلمات / العبارات لربط الجمل و الأفكار في فقرتك :

In addition: to add more information to the same idea.

(بالإضافة لذلك) لإضافة معلومات أكثر إلى نفس الفكرة

However: to show a change in the topic

(مع ذلك) لعرض تغيير في الموضوع

On one hand .. On the other hand: these can show two different points of view on the same topic

(من ناحية ... من ناحية أخرى) يمكن أن توضح وجهتي نظر مختلفتين في نفس الموضوع



Look and read.

The water lily



Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. On one hand, this can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

تنمو أغلب النباتات في التربة. ومع ذلك تنمو بعض النباتات في الماء مثل زنبق الماء. فهو لديه ورقة شجر عريضة مسطحة على سطح الماء وساق طويلة تصل إلى قاع البحيرة. و لها زهور ألوانها زاهية و تنتج بذورًا تطفو على سطح الماء. بالإضافة إلى أن جذورها تنتشر تحت الماء ويمكنها أن تغطي مساحة كبيرة من الماء. من ناحية. يمكن أن يبدو هذا جميلًا، ولكن من ناحية أخرى. يمكن أن تسبب صعوبة للحيوانات والنباتات الأخرى للعيش تحت الماء.

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

However - In addition - On one hand - On the other hand

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. 1) .... , bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. They sleep during the day and hunts for food at night. They can fly very fast at night because they can "see" using a special skill called echolocation. 2) ...., bats are helpful to humans and the environment. 3) ...., large numbers of bats can be noisy and messy. 4) ...., they are helpful to farmers because they pollinate plants and eat large amounts of harmful insects.

Read these contrasting ideas about zoos.

Advantages	Disadvantages
zoos protect endangered animals	animals are kept in the "wrong" habitats
zookeepers love the animals	animals are separated from their family groups
zoos are places of scientific research	animals aren't free to live a natural life
people can see and learn about wild animals	animals can become stressed and unhappy

Help your child read about zoos.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن حدائق الحيوان.

Lessons (5 & 6)

Look and read.



- In this unit you have learned about lot of plants and animals. When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.
- Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands.
- A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

- في هذه الوحدة تعلمت عن الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات. عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعي، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش سويا في بيئة طبيعية. الفقاريات واللافقريات والنباتات جميعهم يحتاجون بعضهم البعض ويعملون سويا للبقاء على قيد الحياة.
- البيئات الكبيرة هي الغابات والصحاري والمناطق العشبية.
- البيئة الصغيرة هي منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.

Large-habitats	Micro-habitat
forests	a pond
deserts	a tree
grasslands	

Read and learn.

Animals and plants that live in the micro-habitats.

pond	بركة	cave	كهف	tree	شجرة
dragonfly	حشرة اليعسوب	bat	خفاش	butterfly	فراشة
fish	سمك	snake	ثعبان	monkey	
frog	ضفدع	lizard	سحلية	bird	
snail	حلزون	spider	عنكبوت	squirrel	سنجاب
water lily	زنبق الماء				
crab	كابوريا				

Help your child look and read. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Most mammals live on ....
   a) forest b) land c) river d) lake
2. .... love the animals
   a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Zookeepers d) Footballers
3. .... are mammals
   a) Birds b) Bats c) Fish d) Snakes
4. Zoos protect .... animals
   a) free b) danger c) endangered d) sad
5. Plants grow in ....
   a) air b) soil c) floor d) dust
6. Dragonflies live in a ....
   a) pond b) tree c) cave d) sea
7. Some plants grow in water such as ....
   a) onions b) water lily c) carrots d) bananas
8. Water lily has a large .... leaf
   a) round b) square c) flat d) circle
9. In ...., people can learn about wild animals
   a) markets b) clubs c) hospitals d) zoos

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

flowers - difficult - roots - flat

Water lily grows in water. It has a large, 1) .... lea[f] on the surface of the water. It has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored 2) ....

Its 3) .... spread under the water. They can cove[r] a very long area. This can look pretty.

Writing Corner

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold-blooded, so they spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. They live on land or rivers.

Fish

Fish live in water. They use their gills to take in oxygen. They can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They use their fins to move.

Insects

Insects are invertebrates. They have six legs. The grasshoppers are very amazing insects. Some insects can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has 8 legs and is called arachnid.

Birds

Birds are warm-blooded vertebrates. They don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers. In addition, they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly. However, there are some birds that can't fly such as the ostrich.

Review on Unit (2)

Vocabulary

Vertebrates	الفقاريات	grasshopper	جرادة	habitat	بيئة / موطن
Invertebrates	اللافقاريات	reptiles	الزواحف	bird	طائر
amphibians	البرمائيات	bat	خفاش	fin	زعنفة
mammals	الثدييات	ostrich	نعامة	scales	قشور - حراشف
beak	منقار	gills	خياشيم	frightened	خائف
fur	فرو	loudly	بصوتٍ عالٍ	dragonfly	يعسوب
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	octopus	أخطبوط	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	snail	حلزون	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
crab	سرطان البحر / كابوريا	squid	حبار	leopard	فهد





Help yo r child review Unit (2).
... على مراجعة الوحدة الثانية.

Language

Comparative Adjectives

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster than

e.g. The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.

Superlative Adjectives

the + adj صفة + est

big → the biggest

small → the smallest

e.g. The blue whale is the biggest sea animal.

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the smallest bird.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل، وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. He runs fast.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + ly

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء

quick سريع → quickly بسرعة

sad حزين → sadly بحزن

good جيد → well جيدا

fast سريع → fast بسرعة

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

- زعانف ....
- سلاحف ....
- خفاش ....
- نعامة ....
- ريش ....

- فقاريات ....
- قرود ....
- حراشف ....
- منقار ....
- خياشيم ....

Lesson (2)

- كوكب الأرض ....
- العالم الطبيعي ....
- الفيل الأفريقي ....
- الفيل الآسيوي ....
- غابات استوائية ....

- ضخم ....
- صغير جدًا ....
- الحوت الأزرق ....
- سمكة قرش الحوت ....
- ضفدع ....

Lesson (3)

- أخطبوط ....
- عنكبوت ....
- جرادة ....
- حشرات ....
- نجمة البحر ....

- حلزون / قوقع ....
- يعسوب ....
- قنديل البحر ....
- سرطان البحر ....
- محار ....

Lesson (4)

- برتقالي ....
- أخضر ....
- أرجواني / بنفسجي ....
- أزرق ....
- أحمر ....

- الألوان الأساسية ....
- الألوان الثانوية ....
- الألوان الفاتحة ....
- الألوان الغامقة ....
- أصفر ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

- ساق نبات ....
- مساحة ....
- جذور ....
- قاع ....
- تربة زراعية ....

- الزنبق المائي ....
- حبوب ....
- ممرات ....
- بحيرة ....
- سطح ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Coral reefs help fish to ....
   a) sleep b) hide c) stay d) lay
2. The coral is very .... and has different colors.
   a) bright b) light c) black d) dark
3. .... don't eat preys that are brightly colored.
   a) Hunters b) Lions c) Fish d) Predators
4. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is ....
   a) poisonous b) good c) friendly d) nice

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

backbone - types - animals - invertebrates

Ahmed is reading a book about animals.

Omar : What are you doing today?

Ahmed : I'm reading a book about 1) ....

Omar : What types of animals are there?

Ahmed : There are vertebrates and 2) ....

Omar : What are vertebrates ?

Ahmed : They're animals with a 3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Using their wings, most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....

a) birds b) mammals c) reptiles d) fish

2. Birds lay eggs which are ....

a) hot b) hard c) soft d) warm

3. Birds use their .... to fl

a) bones b) wings c) fur d) seeds

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Can all birds fly?

....

5. Why are birds' beaks different shapes?

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the tent makers. ☐

2. Zeinab and her grandmother visited the shop. ☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa is a/an ....

a) teacher b) doctor c) artisan d) carpenter

2. Zeinab loves the big picture with all the ....

a) insects b) flowers c) birds d) fish

Activities

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....
   a) slow b) good c) slowly d) quick
2. Dragonflies can fly very ....
   a) fast b) slow c) quick d) big
3. The elephant is .... than the monkey.
   a) the biggest b) big c) bigger d) biggest
4. The blue whale is the .... sea animal.
   a) small b) big c) bigger d) biggest
5. The octopus can swim ....
   a) easy b) quick c) slow d) quickly

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the - The ostrich - leopard - than - faster - is - .
....
2. reptiles - legs - Most - four - have - .
....
3. are - Some - brightly - very - colored - fish - .
....

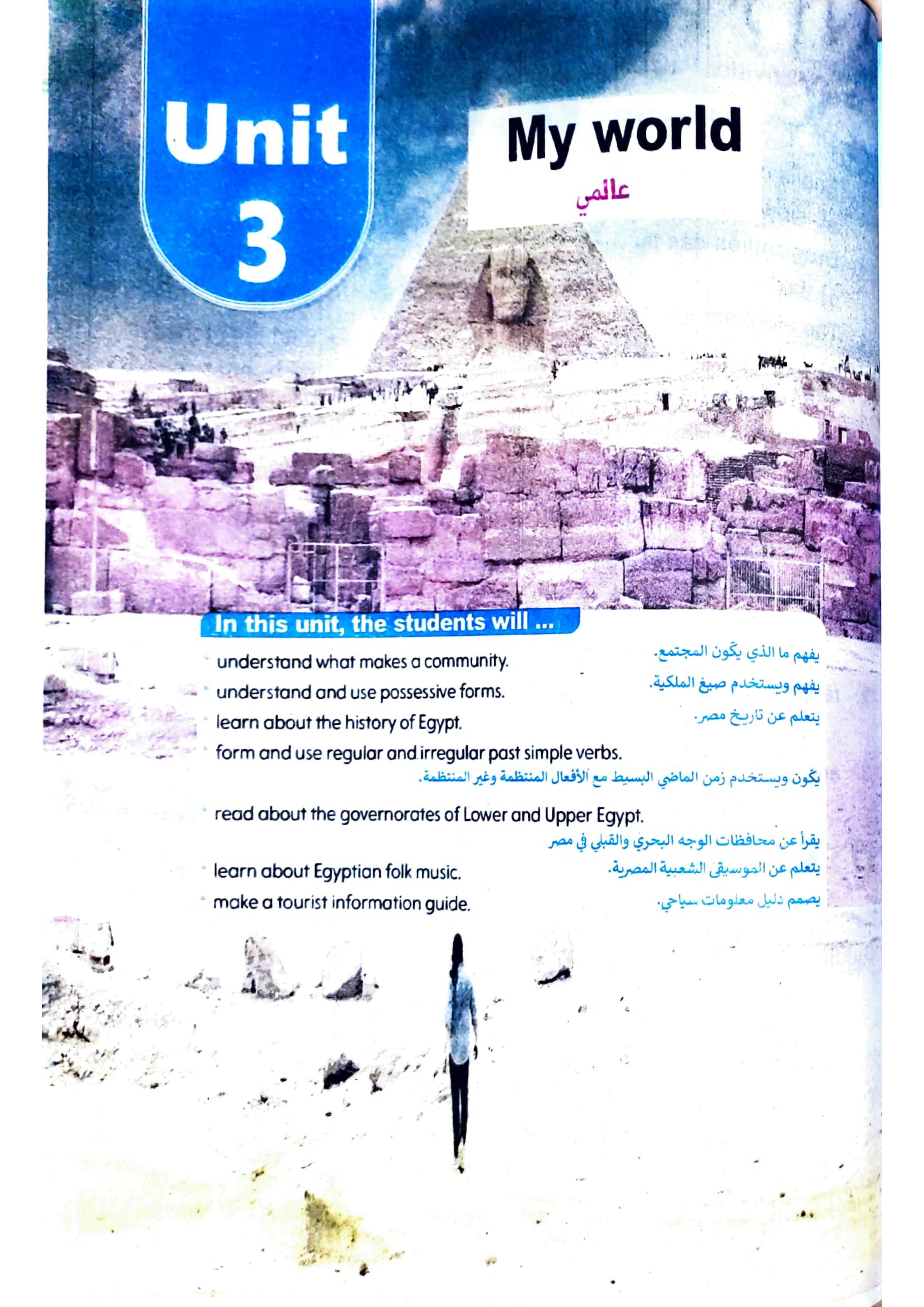
7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Insects

Guiding elements:

(invertebrates - grasshoppers - spider - 8 legs)

....
....
....



Unit 3

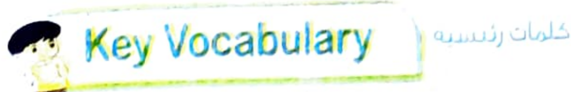
My world

عالمي

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand what makes a community. يفهم ما الذي يكّون المجتمع.
- understand and use possessive forms. يفهم ويستخدم صيغ الملكية.
- learn about the history of Egypt. يتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs. يكّون ويستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.
- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt. يقرأ عن محافظات الوجه البحري والقبلي في مصر
- learn about Egyptian folk music. يتعلم عن الموسيقى الشعبية المصرية.
- make a tourist information guide. يصمم دليل معلومات سياحي.

Lesson (1) MY COMMUNITY



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
community	مجتمع	sports club	نادي رياضي
neighborhood	حي سكني	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	environment	البيئة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
together	معا	group	مجموعة	helpful	متعاون
clothes	ملابس	street	شارع	fair way	طريقة عادلة
activities	أنشطة	tourists	سائحون	shop	محل (متجر صغير)
mixture	خليط	ideas	أفكار	civilization	حضارة
village	قرية	weather	الطقس	polite	مهذب - مودب
society	المجتمع	kind	عطوف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يؤمن	believed	act	يؤدي	acted
share	يشارك	shared	include	يشمل	included

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	mean	يعني / يقصد	meant



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامه

in the same area	في نفس المنطقة	drop trash	يلقي القمامة
more than	أكثر من	look after	يعتني بـ
close to	بالقرب من	What is special about..?	ما المميز بخصوص...؟
for me	بالنسبة لي	work hard	يعمل بجد
act in a way	يتصرف بطريقة	from different parts of	من أجزاء مختلفة من
part of	جزء من	good for	مفيد لـ



Definitions التعريفات

community المجتمع
a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas
مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معاً في نفس المنطقة ويتشاركون الأنشطة والأفكار.

neighborhood الحي السكني
the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live
الشوارع والمنازل والمحلات والمدارس القريبة من مكان سكنك.

citizenship المواطنة
behaving in a way that helps your society
التصرف بطريقة تساعد بها مجتمعك.

activities أنشطة
the things you can do
الأشياء التي تستطيع القيام بها

ideas أفكار
the things you think about and believe in
الأشياء التي تعتقد وتؤمن بها



Did you know?

Egypt is one of the oldest civilizations on Earth. It became powerful over 5.000 years ago.

تعتبر مصر من أقدم الحضارات على وجه الأرض. أصبحت قوية منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ سنة.

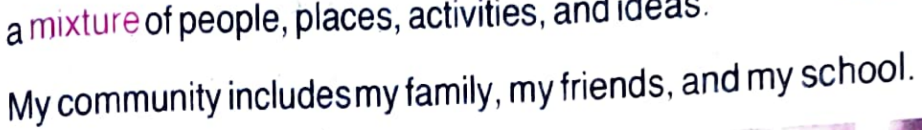
Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Read about Habiba's community.

My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas.



My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.



There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too.

When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community. I am always polite and helpful at school, and at my sports club.

المجتمع هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون ويعملون سويا في نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو أكثر من منزلك، أو عائلتك أو الحي السكني الخاص بك. إنه مزيج من الأشخاص والأماكن والأنشطة والأفكار. مجتمعي يشمل عائلتي و أصدقائي ومدرستي. وهناك على الأرجح أماكن مهمة في مدينتك أو قريتك غالبا ما تزورها. يمكن أن يكون لديك مجتمع هناك. بالنسبة لي، أنا جزء من المجتمع في النادي الرياضي الخاص بي أيضا. فعندما تتصرف بطريقة مفيدة لمجتمعك فهذه مواطنة جيدة. وهذا يعني أنك تعمل بجد لتساعد الأشخاص الآخرون وتتصرف بطريقة لطيفة وعادلة. إن المواطنة الصالحة جزء جيد من كونك في مجتمع. أنا دائما مهذبة ومتعاونة في المدرسة وفي النادي الرياضي الخاص بي.

elp your child understand what makes. community ساعد طفلك أن يفهم مما يتكون المجتمع.

Language



Possessive forms صيغ الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his		his	ملكه
She	هي	her		hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير عاقل	its		----	
We	نحن	our		ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your		yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their		theirs	ملكهم

e.g.

- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- This is my neighborhood. It's mine.
- These are your keys. = These keys are yours.
- That is your bike. It's yours.
- This is our school. It's ours.
- This is my cousins' house. It's theirs.
- Those are Rasha's books. They're hers.
- These are Adam's shoes. They're his.

Help your child understand and use possessive forms.
ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويستخدم أشكال التعبير عن الملكية.

Lesson (1)

صفات الملكية يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك

e.g. This is my car.

ضمائر الملكية لا يأتي بعدها اسم، وغالبًا ما تأتي في نهاية الجملة

e.g. That juice is mine! It isn't yours.

e.g. This is my bike. It's mine.

يمكن استخدام ('s) الملكية:

الشيء المملوك + 's + اسم مفرد

e.g. Adam's shoes.

الشيء المملوك + s' + اسم جمع

e.g. My cousins' house.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This my book. It's ....
   a) his b) hers c) mine d) yours
2. These are Omar's shoes. They are ....
   a) its b) ours c) his d) hers
3. That is .... bike. It's hers.
   a) our b) his c) her d) their
4. My car is red, but .... is white.
   a) his b) her c) our d) its
5. Those are our glasses. They are ....
   a) his b) hers c) ours d) its

2 Read and complete with possessive pronouns.

1. They're Aya's running shoes. They're ....
2. They're Adam's neighbors. They're ....
3. It's my community. It's ....
4. It's your house. It's ....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The girls at my running club are my ....
   a) community b) neighborhood c) students d) citizenship
2. We are all from different parts of ....
   a) town b) country c) village d) city
3. We have lots of friends and families who live in our ....
   a) farm b) neighborhood c) zoo d) park
4. I think good .... is about looking after where you live.
   a) citizenship b) neighborhood c) farming d) community

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Behaving in a way that helps your society is called ....
   a) community b) neighborhood c) playing d) citizenship
2. The things you think and believe in are called ....
   a) activities b) hobbies c) games d) ideas
3. I am always .... My parents love me.
   a) unkind b) noisy c) polite d) bad
4. This is my neighborhood. It's ....
   a) his b) her c) mine d) its
5. This is her skirt. It's ....
   a) his b) theirs c) yours d) hers
6. These are our bikes. They are ....
   a) ours b) theirs c) his d) hers
7. This is my brother's pencil. It's ....
   a) hers b) his c) yours d) theirs
8. That's their car. It's ....
   a) his b) ours c) theirs d) hers

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. A community is a mixture of people, places and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about a ....
   a) neighborhood b) community c) citizenship d) sport
2. My community includes my family, friends and ....
   a) market b) school c) zoo d) farm
3. A community is more than your house, ... or your neighborhood.
   a) family b) doctors c) persons d) groups

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is a community?

....

5. Where can we have a community?

....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Your community

Guiding elements:

(people - places - activities - ideas)

....

....

....

Lesson (2) THE HISTORY OF EGYPT



Vocabulary كلمات

history	التاريخ	country	بلد
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	boats	مراكب / قوارب
pharaoh	فرعون	kingdom	مملكة
long history	تاريخ عريق	symbols	رموز
north	الشمال	scribe	كاتب
south	الجنوب	area	مساحة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	desert	صحراء
hieroglyphic	هيروغليفي	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي
powerful	قوي	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري
interesting	شيّق - ممتع	separate areas	مناطق منفصلة
mixture	خليط	ruling dynasties	سُلالات حاكمة
BCE	قبل الميلاد	papyrus	ورق البردي
tombs	مقابر	papyrus reeds	عيدان نبات البردي
signs	علامات		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started
separate	يفصل	separated
join	يلتقي / يتصل بـ	joined
unite	يوحد	united
sail	يبحر	sailed
rule	يحكم	ruled
control	يتحكم / يسيطر	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
build	يبني	built
mean	يعني	meant
read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made
spend	يقضي	spent
write	يكتب	wrote
become	يصبح	became

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write down	يدون / يسجل	write in hieroglyphs	يكتب باللغة الهيروغليفية
work for	يعمل لدى	At first	في البداية
write on stone	يكتب على الحجر	as far as	حتى - بقدر ما
flow throw	يمر - يتدفق من خلال	made from	مصنوع من

Read about the history of Egypt.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.



In about 3200 BCE, one Pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

There are three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt:

the Old Kingdom	the Middle Kingdom	the New Kingdom
(2800 – 2200 BCE)	(2065 – 1775 BCE)	(1570 – 1098 BCE)

Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

مصر دولة ذات تاريخ عريق ومثير للاهتمام للغاية. بدأ الناس العيش بالقرب من النيل منذ حوالي ٩,٠٠٠ عام، في عام ٧٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد.
في البداية، كان هناك منطقتان منفصلتان، هي مصر السفلى وكانت في الشمال حيث يلتقي النيل مع البحر، وصعيد مصر في الجنوب، حيث يتدفق النيل عبر صحاري افريقيا. في حوال عام ٣٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد، ربط أحد الفراعنة ويدعى مينا الجزئين لتوحيد دولة مصر. كانت مصر تتحكم في نهر النيل بقدر ما كانت القوارب تبحر فيه، لذلك أصبحت ذات نفوذ قوى.
يوجد ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية لتاريخ مصر القديمة:
١- المملكة القديمة من ٢٨٠٠ إلى ٢٢٠٠ ق.م ٢- المملكة الوسطى من ٢٠٦٥ إلى ١٧٧٥ ق.م ٣- المملكة الحديثة من ١٥٧٠ إلى ١٠٩٨ ق.م
سيطرت سلالات حاكمة هامة على مصر لسنوات عديدة. هذه العائلات الهامة هم من حكموا البلاد.

Help your child learn about the history of Egypt.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.

Read and learn.



How do we know so much about the history of Egypt? Egyptians at that time used **scribes** to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties.

They wrote in **hieroglyphs**, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learned to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

كيف لنا أن نعرف الكثير عن تاريخ مصر؟ استخدم المصريون في ذلك الوقت الكتبة ليدونوا كل شيء حدث. كان الكتبة أشخاصًا مهمين للغاية. كانوا يعملون لدى الأسر الحاكمة. كانوا يكتبون بالهيروغليفية والتي كانت عبارة عن صور أو رموز تعني كلمة واحدة أو عدة أفكار. يمكننا أن نرى الكتابة الهيروغليفية اليوم في المقابر والمتاحف. تعلم الأطفال ليصبحوا كتبة في المدرسة. كان الكتبة يكتبون على الأحجار وعلى الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردي.



Did you know?

- The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648-2627 BCE.
- There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

- هرم زوسر هو أقدم هرم في العالم. بدأ الناس بناءه حوالي عام ٢٦٤٨ - ٢٦٢٧ قبل الميلاد.
- هناك أكثر من ٧٠٠ رمز هيروغليفي.

Help your child learn about the history of Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.

Lesson (2)



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form:

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة — يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

like → liked | join → joined | study → studied

Spelling rules

1 Verbs end in (e), add only (d).

rule → ruled | move → moved | use → used

2 Verbs end in (y) preceded by a consonant, omit (y) then add (ied).

try → tried | study → studied | cry → cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة — ليس لها شكل محدد وتحفظ

write → wrote | is → was | make → made

Usage:

We use past simple tense to express actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. They wrote in hieroglyphs.

Keywords:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month ,...)	(الأسبوع / الشهر) الماضي
فترة زمنية + ago	منذ	in + تاريخ ماضي	(in 2010)

Help your child form and use past simple verbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يكون ويستخدم الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... to the club yesterda
   a) go b) went c) goes d) going
2. They .... in hieroglyphs in ancient Egy
   a) write b) writing c) wrote d) writes
3. Children .... to become scribes at scho
   a) to learn b) learns c) learning d) learned
4. Scribes .... very important peop
   a) were b) was c) are d) have
5. I .... at school yesterda
   a) am b) was c) are d) were
6. Last week, children .... Englis
   a) will study b) study c) studied d) studies

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the verb in brackets

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt 1) .... (learn) to read and write. Thi

2) .... (be) a job for scribes. Scribe

3) .... (be) very important people in society. To become a scribe, childre

4) .... (go) to a special school. Here the

5) .... (study) hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts. The childre

6) .... (have) to learn lots of different signs and symbols. The

7) .... (spend) all day copying the signs onto stone or papyrus paper. Scribe

8) .... (write) with reed brushes and ink. The

9) .... (make) ink from brightly colored minerals which the

10) .... (mix) with liqui

It 11) .... (take) four or five years to finish their education at scribe schoo

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and ....
   a) play b) point c) write d) listen
2. This was a job for ....
   a) scribes b) architects c) doctors d) farmers
3. To become a scribe, children went to a .... school.
   a) secret b) private c) public d) special
4. The children had to learn lots of different signs and ....
   a) symbols b) examples c) rules d) subjects

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

three - history - Upper - ancient

Mona : Did you learn about the history of Egypt?
Sara : Yes, I did.
Mona : How many parts of the history of 1) .... Egypt are there?
Sara : There are 2) .... main parts of the history.
Mona : Where was 3) .... Egypt?
Sara : It was in the south.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians .... scribes to write down everything that happened.
   a) use b) used c) will use d) uses
2. Ancient Egyptian .... in hieroglyphs.
   a) write b) writes c) wrote d) written
3. When did people .... to live near the Nile?
   a) start b) starts c) started d) starting
4. Ali .... born in Giza.
   a) is b) was c) were d) has

the country of Egypt

5. Mena joined the two parts to .... the country of Egypt
   a) separate   b) unite   c) connect   d) subject
6. Egyptians used .... to write down everything that happened
   a) rulers   b) scribes   c) teachers   d) doctors
7. The Ancient Egyptians wrote in ....
   a) hieroglyphs   b) Arabic   c) English   d) French
8. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago
   a) start   b) started   c) starts   d) starting

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt has a long and interesting ....
   a) math   b) Arabic   c) history   d) story
2. The Nile flows through the deserts of ....
   a) Asia   b) China   c) Africa   d) Europe
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) history   b) Egypt   c) Nile   d) desert

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did people start to live near the Nile?

....

5. Who united the two parts of Egypt?

....

Lesson (2)

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Egypt - Upper - was - south - in the - .

   ....

2. Egyptians - hieroglyphs - The ancient - in - wrote - .

   ....

3. to become - Children - at school - a scribe - learned - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

The history of Egypt

Guiding elements:

(history - the Nile - Lower - Upper - joined)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) THE GOVERNORATES OF EGYPT

Vocabulary كلمات

governorate	محافظة	large cities	ن كبرى
the countryside	الريف	How big ...?	م الحجم ...؟
region	منطقة	Which ...?	يهما ...؟
the High Dam	السد العالي	port	يناء
oasis	واحة	population	دد السكان
farthest	الأبعد	natural features	لسمات الطبيعية
water sports	رياضات مائية	Desert governorates	المحافظات الصحراوية
capital city	العاصمة	popular	محبوب / مشهور
map	خريطة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
sail	يبحر	sailed
finish	ينهي	finished
visit	يزور	visited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
have / has	يملك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look at	ينظر إلى	find places on the map	يجد أماكن على الخريطة
sail in	يبحر داخل	sail out of	يبحر خارج
next to	بجانب	lots of = a lot of	الكثير من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Look and read.

The Governorates of Egypt

There are 27 governorates in Egypt today.

Look at the map. Where do you live?

يوجد سبعة وعشرون محافظة في مصر اليوم. انظر إلى الخريطة. أين تعيش؟



Lower Egypt governorates محافظات الوجه البحري

Kafr El Sheikh	كفر الشيخ	Monufia	المنوفية	Port Said	بورسعيد
Dakahlia	الدقهلية	Ismalia	الإسماعيلية	Cairo	القاهرة
Damietta	دمياط	Qalyubia	القليوبية	Beheira	البحيرة
Gharbia	الغربية	Suez	السويس	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Sharqia	الشرقية				

Upper Egypt governorates محافظات الوجه القبلي

Giza	الجيزة	Minya	المنيا	Qena	قنا
Faiyum	الفيوم	Asyut	أسيوط	Luxor	الأقصر
Beni Suef	بني سويف	Sohag	سوهاج	Aswan	أسوان

Desert governorates المحافظات الصحراوية

Matruh	مطروح	North Sinai	شمال سيناء
New Valley	الوادي الجديد	South Sinai	جنوب سيناء
Red Sea	البحر الأحمر		

Help your child identify the governorates of Egypt.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على محافظات مصر.

Fares



I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.



أنا فارس، وأعيش في محافظة البحر الأحمر. إن بها شاطئ يبلغ طوله ١٠٠٠ كم. إنه مكان مشهور جدا للزيارة من أجل رياضة الغوص تحت الماء والرياضات المائية.

Nadia



I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

أنا نادية، وأعيش في محافظة أسوان. إنها الأبعد في جنوب صعيد مصر وعاصمتها مدينة أسوان. في عام ١٩٧٠، أنهى المهندسون بناء السد العالي في أسوان.

Ibrahim



I'm Ibrahim, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

أنا إبراهيم، وأعيش في محافظة الإسكندرية. إنها محافظة هامة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر إلى داخل وخارج الميناء. كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة مصر في الماضي.

Help your child look and read. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ibrahim lives in the .... Governorate.
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Alexandria
2. Alexandria is ....
   a) important b) busy c) ugly d) small
3. Ships sail in and out of the ....
   a) oasis b) river c) sea d) port
4. The city of Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt.
   a) capital b) countryside c) village d) town

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Governerate - capital - oasis - population

New Valley Governerate is 440,098 km^2 in size. It is a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big 1) .... The population is about 245,000. The 2) .... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an 3) .... town in the south of this region.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A governorate has ....
   a) zoos b) oceans
   c) cities and countryside d) sails
2. The High Dam is in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Aswan d) Damietta
3. There are .... governorates in Egypt.
   a) 10 b) 20 c) 27 d) 26
4. Damietta Governorate is in .... Egypt.
   a) Upper b) Lower c) Low d) High
5. The Red Sea Governorate has a .... which is over 1,000 km.
   a) river b) lake c) beach d) bank

6. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High ....
   a) School b) Park c) Dam d) Zoo
7. Alexandria used to be the capital .... of Egypt
   a) countryside b) village c) city d) town
8. You can visit the Red Sea for scuba ....
   a) playing b) diving c) jumping d) swimming
9. Alexandria is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the ....
   a) sort b) port c) court d) part
10. Aswan is the farthest .... in Upper Egypt
   a) east b) south c) west d) north
11. Lots of .... sail in and out the port of Alexandria.
   a) ships b) planes c) cars d) bikes
12. I can find my governorate on the ....
   a) club b) map c) water d) sand
13. You can do .... sports in the Red Sea.
   a) floor b) ground c) oil d) water
14. Luxor is in the south. It's a/an .... Egypt governorate.
   a) Lower b) Upper c) Desert d) Coast

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. governorates - 27 - There - Egypt - are - in - .

....

2. biggest - New Valley - the - governorate - is - .

....

3. people - Cairo - How many - live - in - Governorate - ?

....

4. Governorate - square - Damietta - 1200 - is - kilometers - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports. My friend, Nadia lives in Aswan Governorate. It is the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .... Governorate.
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Red Sea d) Giza
2. .... finished the Aswan High Dam in 1970.
   a) Teachers b) Engineers c) Doctors d) Tourists
3. The Red Sea Governorate has a beach which is over one .... km.
   a) ten b) hundred c) thousand d) million

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Nadia live?

....

5. What does the Red Sea Governorate have?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Alexandria

Guiding elements:

(live - north - ships - port - capital)

....

....

....

Lesson (4)

CLIL: MUSIC

Listen, point and say.



violin

الكمان



oud

العود

qanun

القانون



oboe

أوبو



rebaba

الربابة



Music

الموسيقى

String instruments

آلات وترية

Wind instruments

آلات نفخ

Parts of music

أجزاء الموسيقى



shabbaba

الشبابة



singing

الغناء



drumming

دق الطبول



clapping

التصفيق



ney

الناي

Help your child identify these words.

طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)



Kinds of music in Egypt

folk music	موسيقى شعبية	Bedouin music	موسيقى بدوية
Saidi music	موسيقى صعيدية	modern styles of music	موسيقى حديثة
Nubian music	موسيقى نوبية		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

different	مختلف	song	أغنية	musician	موسيقار
event	حدث	type	نوع	style	شكل / أسلوب
important	مهم	special	خاص	popular	شعبي / محبوب
traditional	تقليدي				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
play	يعزف	played
drum	يدق الطبول	drummed
clap	يصفق	clapped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
sing	يغني	sang
know	يعرف	knew
put	يضع	put

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lots of	كثير من	such as	مثل
key part	جزء أساسي	farther south	أقصى الجنوب
home of	موطن لـ - منبع	all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر
mix with	يمزج بـ		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

What kind of music do you like?

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

Farther south is the home of Nubian music. Clapping and drumming is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt. Sometimes it is mixed with other modern styles of music.

The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

مصر لديها الكثير من الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية. هناك أنماط مختلفة من أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد. فالموسيقيون الشعبيون من صعيد مصر يعزفون الموسيقى الصعيدية. فيستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الآلات الوترية مثل الكمان وآلات النفخ مثل الأوبو. الغناء وقرع الطبول أيضًا جزء أساسي. يوجد في أقصى الجنوب موطن الموسيقى النوبية ويعد التصفيق وقرع الطبول جزءًا هامًا من هذا النوع من الموسيقى. الموسيقى النوبية معروفة حاليًا في كل أنحاء مصر. أحيانًا تدمج مع أنواع حديثة أخرى من الموسيقى. أشهر الآلات الموسيقية البدوية هي الشبابة والربابة. تشمل الموسيقى البدوية غالبًا الغناء. تكون الأغاني عادة حول الأحداث الخاصة.

...d you know?

...nt, too. We know this because
...and ancient

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

important - instruments - know - pictures

Music was important in ancient Egypt, too, We 1) .... this because scribes made 2) .... of musicians playing 3) .... , and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... is a wind instrument.
   a) violin b) rebaba c) oboe d) guitar
2. The .... is a Bedouin musical instrument.
   a) shabbaba b) oud c) violin d) guitar
3. The rebaba is a .... instrument.
   a) wind b) string c) modern d) windy
4. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play .... music.
   a) ancient b) new c) modern d) Saidi
5. Nubian music is popular all .... Egypt.
   a) over b) up c) in d) on
6. We can .... with our hands.
   a) clap b) run c) see d) smell
7. Bedouin music often includes ....
   a) diving b) swimming c) running d) singing

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lots of - folk - Egypt - music - has - traditional - .
....
2. like - What - music - of - do you - kind - ?
....
3. important - Egypt - Music - in - was - ancient - .

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. Musicians in farther south of Egypt play Nubian music. Musicians in the deserts of Egypt play Bedouin music. Musicians in Egypt use many musical instruments, such as the violin, the oboe, the shabbaba and the rebaba.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a) farming b) music c) football d) swimming
2. Nubian music is played in the .... of Egypt.
   a) north b) west c) east d) south
3. The shabbaba and the rebaba are musical ....
   a) musicians b) subjects c) instruments d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What music do musicians play in Upper Egypt?

....

5. Where is Bedouin music played?

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Music in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(folk - Saidi - Bedouin - instrument - rebaba - clapping)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5 & 6) WRITING PROJECT



Vocabulary كلمات

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي	patterns	أنماط / نقوش
Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبي	fighting	قتال
Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا	costumes	أزياء
Tahtib	التحطيب	plain	سادة
rhythm	إيقاع	alongside	بمحاذاة
stick	عصا	simsimeya	آلة السمسمية
tradition	تقليد	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية / حِرَف
occasion	مناسبة	carpet	سجادة
complicated	معقد	wool	صوف

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

dancer	راقص	special	خاص / مميز
style	أسلوب	lively	مفعم بالنشاط والحيوية
musician	موسيقار	international	دولي
singing	الغناء	key	مفتاح
Saidi music	الموسيقى الصعيدية	poetry	شِعر



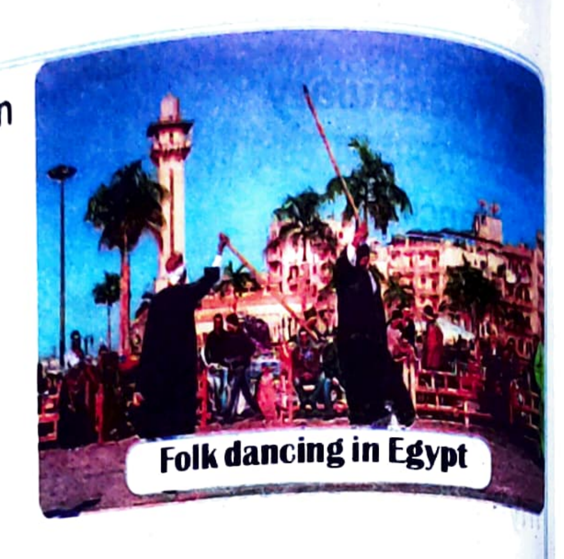
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
move	يحرك	moved	step	يخطو	stepped
perform	يؤدي	performed	decorate	يزين	decorated

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.


Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas.

Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music.

Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright colored and patterned.

In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

الرقص الشعبي له تاريخ طويل في مصر، وهو مرتبط بالموسيقى الشعبية في مناطق مختلفة. الرقص النوبي ذو حيوية وبهجة. يحرك الناس أذرعهم وأقدامهم على إيقاع الموسيقى. الرقص بالعصا على الأرجح هو الرقص الأكثر شهرة في الموسيقى الصعيدية التقليدية. يستخدم الراقصون العصا (العصايا) ويخطون بسرعة بأنماط مخصوصة. أيضًا التحطيب من تقاليد الموسيقى الصعيدية. حيث يقوم الراقصون بالرقص بعناية بالعصا بطريقة تشبه القتال. يرتدي الراقصون أزياء خاصة. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس داكنة وسادة (ذات لون واحد) أو زاهية اللون وذات نقوش. في المدن بمحاذاة قناة السويس هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقى والرقص. يعزف العازفون على آلة السمسمية، وهي آلة بدوية، بالإضافة إلى الطبول.

Help your child read and learn about folk dancing.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الرقص الشعبي.

Look and read.



There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

هناك تاريخ طويل من الحرف اليدوية التقليدية في مصر، واثنان من أشهر الحرف اليدوية هما الخيامية وصناعة السجاد. في الماضي، أنشأ صناع الخيام الخيامية لتزيين الخيام الضخمة لحفلات الزفاف والمناسبات العائلية الأخرى. تم تصميم أنماط الخيامية بشكل جميل باستخدام ألوان مختلفة. اليوم يمكنك شراء الخيامية من العديد من المتاجر والأسواق التجارية.

Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

صناعة السجاد حرفة مصرية أخرى. يمكن للشخص الماهر أن يعمل بسرعة، لكن الأمر يستغرق سنوات عديدة لتعلم كيفية صنع سجادة مصرية. النقوش لامعة وزاهية الألوان وكل سجادة مصنوعة بعناية باستخدام الصوف المصري. يشتهر سجاد قشقاي وشيرازي بأنماطهما المعقدة باللونين الأحمر والأزرق.



Writing tip!

When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

عندما تكتب وصفًا ، استخدم مزيج من الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك أكثر تشويقًا.

Adjectives	صفات	Adverbs	ظروف / أحوال
famous	مشهور	quickly	بسرعة
colorful	ملون	carefully	بحرص - بعناية
bright	لامع		

Adjectives: الصفات:

An adjective is a word that describes a noun . It comes before the noun or with verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبل الاسم أو مع فعل (be)

Adverbs: الظروف:

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb and how the action is done.

الظرف هو كلمة تصف الفعل وتصف كيف يتم الحدث

Adjectives

- She is a slow girl.
- Ali is good.

الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله أو بعد (v . to be)

Adverbs

- She walks slowly.
- He plays well.

الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده.

Help your child learn how to write a description using adjectives and adverbs.

ساعد طفلك في تعلم كيفية كتابة وصف مستخدمًا الصفات والظروف.

Lessons (5 & 6)



parts of paragraph

1 The topic or introduction sentence. جملة الموضوع / المقدمة

- It's the first sentence. - هي الجملة الأولى.
- It explains the main idea of the paragraph. - تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.
- Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

- الجُمل الرئيسية في الفقرة يتم توضيحها بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.

2 The last sentence. الجملة الأخيرة

- It usually presents a summary of the topic in other words

- عادة ما تقدم ملخصًا للموضوع بأسلوب آخر.

Project

Sections of a tourist information guide

أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية

1) Location الموقع : where a place is in the country

أين يوجد المكان في البلد.

e.g. It's in the north of the country.

2) Geography الجغرافيا : the environment and any natural features

البيئة وأي مظاهر طبيعية.

e.g. There are high mountains next to a river.

place

لما يمكنك أن تفعل وترى في المكان

e.g. There's an art exhibition at the museum and a market every Tuesday.

4) History التاريخ : information about what happened here in the past

معلومات عما حدث هنا في الماضي

e.g. People used to make paper from papyrus reeds.

5) Culture الثقافة : traditional art, entertainment, food and music

الفن التقليدي والترفيه والطعام والموسيقى

e.g. People play traditional music on string instruments.

Write a paragraph.

Make a tourist guide to the place where you live.

صمم دليلًا سياحيًا للمكان الذي تعيش فيه.

Aswan

Location : in the south of Egypt

Attractions : temples, monuments and the High Dam

Culture : traditional music

I live in Aswan. It's a city in the south of Egypt. Aswan has many attractions and monuments. There is Abo Simbel Temple. It's very famous. There is also the High Dam. It was built in 1970. People in Aswan play traditional music. They use traditional instruments like the rebaba and the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a part of folk music. If you visit Aswan you'll have a good time there.

Help your child learn sections of a tourist information guide

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Carpet making is an Egyptian ....
   a) craft   b) sport   c) food   d) meal
2. A skilled person can work ....
   a) slowly   b) quickly   c) happily   d) angrily
3. The .... are bright and colorful.
   a) crafts   b) skills   c) colors   d) patterns
4. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are .... for their complicated patterns.
   a) old   b) unknown   c) kind   d) famous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... dancing has a long history in Egypt.
   a) New   b) Fort   c) Folk   d) Modern
2. Nubian dancing is lively and ....
   a) good   b) bad   c) color   d) colorful
3. People move their arms and feet to the .... of the music.
   a) rhythm   b) song   c) bird   d) rebaba
4. .... is what you can do and see in a place.
   a) Attractions   b) Location   c) History   d) Culture
5. .... is traditional art, entertainment, food, and music.
   a) Attractions   b) Location   c) History   d) Culture

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Egyptian - an - Carpet - craft - is - making - .

   ....

2. stores - You - Khayameya - buy - in - many - can - .

   ....

3. colorful - and - Nubian - dancing - is - lively - .

   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There is a long .... of traditional crafts in Egypt.
   a) English b) Math c) Arabic d) history
2. Khayameya patterns are .... designed.
   a) badly b) beautifully c) happily d) sadly
3. The underlined word "huge" means very ....
   a) small b) short c) tiny d) big

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who created Khayameya in the past?

....

5. Where can we buy Khayameya?

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Carpet making

Guiding elements:

(craft - skilled - colorful - complicated)

....

....

....



My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. I live in a village. There is a sports club and I'm part of this community. At the club, we share our ideas and help keep it clean. It's good to be helpful and useful in your community.

My governorate

There are 27 governorates in Egypt today. I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's in the north of Egypt. It's very big. It's very important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. There are many attractions in Alexandria, such as Qaitbay Fort.

Music in Egypt

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

Ancient Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.

Vocabulary

community	مجتمع	ney	
neighborhood	حي سكني	oboe	(يشبه المزمار)
citizenship	مواطنة	oud	
pharaoh	فرعون	wind instrument	
governorates of Egypt	محافظات مصر	string instrument	
history	تاريخ	rebaba	
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	shabbaba	
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	simsimeya	
scribe	كاتب	Raqs Assaya	
capital city	العاصمة	Tahtib	
clapping	التصفيق	qanun	

Possessive forms

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his		his	ملكه
She	هي	her		hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير عاقل	its		----	
We	نحن	our		ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your		yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their		theirs	ملكهم

Help your child revise Unit (3).

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

- مجتمع ....
- حي سكني ....
- جيران ....
- نادي رياضي ....
- المواطنة ....
- البيئة ....
- متعاون ....
- مجموعة ....
- ملابس ....
- قرية ....

Lesson (2)

- بلد ....
- مراكب / قوارب ....
- مملكة ....
- رموز ....
- مساحة ....
- صحراء ....
- الوجه القبلي ....
- الوجه البحري ....
- التاريخ ....
- فرعون ....

Lesson (3)

- محافظة ....
- الريف ....
- منطقة ....
- السد العالي ....
- واحة ....
- العاصمة ....
- خريطة ....
- عدد السكان ....
- محبوب / مشهور ....
- مدن كبرى ....

Lesson (4)

- القانون ....
- أوبو ....
- الشبابة ....
- الناي ....
- التصفيق ....
- دق الطبول ....
- الغناء ....
- الربابة ....
- الكمان ....
- العود ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

- الرقص لشعبي ....
- الرقص النوبي ....
- الرقص بالعصا ....
- التحطيب ....
- إيقاع ....
- عصا ....
- مناسبة ....
- قتال ....
- أزياء ....
- سجادة ....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (3)

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians used .... to write down everything that happened
   a) doctors b) scribes c) vets d) teachers
2. Ancient Egyptians wrote in ....
   a) Arabic b) hieroglyphs c) French d) English
3. Hieroglyphs are pictures or ....
   a) birds b) symbols c) drawings d) letters
4. We can see hieroglyphs today in .... and museums
   a) classrooms b) caves c) cinemas d) tombs

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

countryside - New Valley - people - seas

Ali : How many governorates are there in Egypt?
Omar : There are 27 governorates.
Ali : What is in a governorate?
Omar : Cities and 1) ....
Ali : Which governorate is the biggest?
Omar : It is 2) ....
Ali : How many 3) .... live in Cairo governorate?
Omar : 10 million people.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea is about .... making.
   a) carpet b) bed c) sofa d) chair
2. A skilled person can work .... to make a carpet.
   a) quick b) quickly c) slow d) slowly
3. The underlined word "quickly" is the opposite of ....
   a) happily b) nicely c) sadly d) slowly

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. How long does it take to learn to make an Egyptian carpet?

....

5. What are Qashqai and Shirazi carpets famous for?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa's eyes aren't good now.
2. Grandpa can sew.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

3. Zeinab loved a big .... on the wall of the shop.
   a) chair b) picture c) sofa d) bed
4. Grandpa can .... Zeinab to learn sewing.
   a) help b) play c) learn d) do

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scribes .... very important in Ancient Egypt.
   a) are b) were c) have d) has
2. This book isn't yours. It's ....
   a) your b) her c) hers d) my
3. These are Adam's shoes. They're ....
   a) ours b) its c) his d) hers
4. This is our school. It's ....
   a) your b) yours c) mine d) ours
5. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs.
   a) write b) wrote c) writing d) writes

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. dancing - lovely - Nubian - is - .

....

2. Governorate - I - in - live - Alexandria - the - .

....

3. you - is - A community - a place - live - where - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Aswan

Guiding elements:

(live - Governorate - south - High Dam)

....

....

....

Activities On Review (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our digestive system works when we eat and ....
   a) drink b) breathe c) move d) listen
2. A special liquid .... the food into energy.
   a) eats b) goes c) works d) changes
3. We use our .... system when we breathe,.
   a) nervous b) respiratory c) digestive d) muscular
4. We breathe in air through our ....
   a) ear b) nose c) eye d) hand

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

meet - capital - Governorate - live

Omar : Hello! Nice to meet you.

Nadia : Hello! Nice to 1) .... you, too.

Omar : Where do you live?

Nadia : I live in Aswan 2) ....

Omar : Where is it?

Nadia : It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its 3) .... is Aswan.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a) plants b) animals c) birds d) fish

2. Some water plants can cover a very .... area.

a) large b) different c) small d) difficult

3. Some plants grow in ....

a) gold b) silver c) water d) air

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What parts of a water lily are on top of the water?

....

5. What parts of a water lily are under the water?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa's favorite design is sunflower.

2. Zeinab likes sewing.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa liked sewing ....

a) animals b) geometric patterns c) birds d) sunflower

2. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... in the past.

a) singer b) engineer c) doctor d) pilot

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....
   a) far b) loudly c) slowly d) quick
2. The giant squid is .... than the crab.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small
3. Octopuses can swim .... than chameleons.
   a) good b) better c) the best d) bad
4. This is my cousins' house. It's ....
   a) theirs b) them c) their d) they
5. Mena .... the north and south to form Egypt.
   a) unite b) unites c) united d) uniting

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. than - whale - The elephant - the blue - smaller - is - .

....

2. has - Egypt - music - of - lots - traditional .

....

3. primary - three - are - What - the - colors - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

My Governorate

Guiding elements:

(Red Sea - beach - popular - diving)

....

....

....

NON-FICTION READER

Coral Reefs

Look and read



What are coral reefs? They lo[illegible] like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates, called polyps. They have a hard exoskeleton, and they don't move - they stay in the same place all the time.

Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly. They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years.

We think coral reefs have very bright colors. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have [illegible] bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny algae that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see. In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny [illegible].

ما هي الشعاب المرجانية؟ تبدو وكأنها مكونة من النباتات [illegible] خطأ. تتكون الشعاب المرجانية من آلاف اللافقاريات الصغيرة جدًا التي تسمى البوليب. لديها هيكل خارجي صلب ولا تتحرك - تبقى في نفس المكان طول الوقت. تنمو أنواع مختلفة من البوليب في أشكال وأحجام مختلفة، لكنها تنمو ببطء شديد. في بعض الأحيان يمكن أن تنمو لأكثر من عشرة آلاف سنة. - نعتقد أن الشعاب المرجانية لها ألوان زاهية جدًا. ومع ذلك فإن معظم الشعاب المرجانية ليس لها لون. لديها أجسام صافية وهيكلها الخارجي أبيض. يأتي اللون من الطحالب الصغيرة التي تعيش داخل البوليب، وألوانها الزاهية هي التي يمكننا رؤيتها. في جزء صغير من الشعاب المرجانية يوجد ملايين من الكائنات الحية الصغيرة.

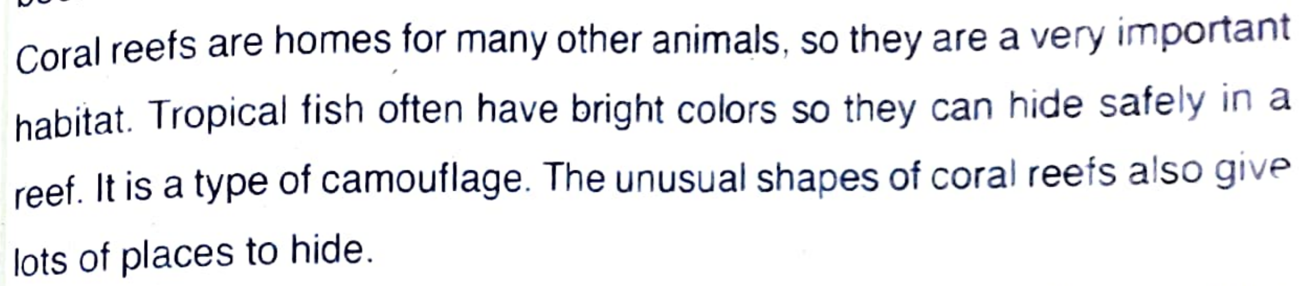
Help your child read about coral reefs.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الشعاب المرجانية.

Non-fiction Reader

Coral polyps can live in all the oceans around the world, in very cold water and in warm seas.
They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water.
The water must be shallow too,



because the reefs need sunlight to live and to grow.



Coral reefs are homes for many other animals, so they are a very important habitat. Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of camouflage. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to hide.

The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2,000 square kilometers.

يمكن أن تعيش السلائل المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم، في المياه شديدة البرودة وفي البحار الدافئة. وتنمو فقط معًا وتصنع شعابًا مرجانية في المياه الدافئة. يجب أن تكون المياه ضحلة أيضًا لأن الشعاب المرجانية تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس لتعيش وتنمو.

الشعاب المرجانية هي موطن للعديد من الحيوانات الأخرى لذلك فهي موطن هام جدًا. غالبًا ما تكون الأسماك الاستوائية زاهية الألوان حتى تتمكن من الاختباء بأمان في الشعاب المرجانية. وهذا نوع من التمويه (التخفي). تتيح أيضًا الأشكال غير العادية للشعاب المرجانية أماكن كثيرة للاختباء.

إن الشعاب المرجانية المتواجدة بالبحر الأحمر هي أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية في إفريقيا وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب في العالم. ويبلغ طولها حوالي ٤,٠٠٠ كيلو متر ويغطي أكثر من ٢,٠٠٠ كيلو متر مربع.

Read and answer.

1. Why do coral reefs have bright colors? ....
2. Why do coral reefs need sunlight? ....
3. Why do tropical fish live in coral reefs? ....



Help your child read about coral reefs.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الشعاب المرجانية.

Look and read.



At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer. This is because of global warming. When the water temperature rises, the algae inside the coral polyps leave. The algae give the coral reef its bright colors. So, when the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called cora[l] bleaching.

Coral bleaching can also happen when there is pollution, too muc[h] sunlight, or not enough water. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies and the animals who live in the reef cannot stay there.

ذه اللحظة، تزداد البحار والمحيطات على الأرض دفئًا. هذا بسبب الاحتباس الحراري. عندما ترتفع درجة حرارة الماء تغادر الطحالب التي بداخل الشعاب رجانية. تعطي الطحالب للشعاب المرجانية ألوانها الزاهية لذلك عندما تغادر الطحالب تصبح الشعاب المرجانية شاحبة وبيضاء وهذا ما يسمى تبيض رجان. كما يمكن أن يحدث تبيض المرجان عندما يكون هناك تلوث أو وجود الكثير من أشعة الشمس أو عدم وجود المياه بشكل كافي. فعندما تفقد الشعاب رجانية ألوانها فإنها تموت وبالتالي لا تستطيع الحيوانات التي تعيش بداخلها البقاء.

In 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Se[a] can survive changes in temperature. They are the only types of coral i[n] the world that can do this. The water of the Red Sea is warmer than othe[r] seas, so the coral in the Red Sea does not have the same problem wi[th] coral bleaching. Scientists hope that they can use the Red Sea coral t[o] protect other coral reefs around the world.

To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our oceans. We must also work together to reduce global warming. It's important t[o] protect the Red Sea coral reef and other coral reefs around the world.

عام ٢٠٢٠ اكتشف العلماء أن بعض الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر يمكنها أن تتحمل التغيرات في درجات الحرارة فهي النوع الوحيد من المرجان في لم الذي يمكنه فعل ذلك. مياه البحر الأحمر أكثر دفئًا من البحار الأخرى، لذلك لا يوجد نفس المشكلة للمرجان في البحر الأحمر مع أبيضاض المرجان. مل العلماء أن يتمكنوا من استعمال مرجان البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية الأخرى حول العالم. ولحماية الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج أيضًا تقليل وث في محيطاتنا. ويجب أن نعمل سويًا لتقليل الاحتباس الحراري. من المهم أن نحمي الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر والشعاب المرجانية حول العالم.

Help your child read about coral reefs.
طفلك أن يقرأ عن الشعاب المرجانية.

General Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral reefs are large groups of colored plants.
2. Coral reefs grow very quickly.
3. Coral polyps are lots of different colors.
4. Coral reefs grow in very deep water in the ocean.
5. Coral reefs need sunlight.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a or b.

1. What is happening to the Earth's seas and oceans now?
   a) The water is becoming warmer.
   b) The water is becoming more shallow.
2. What gives coral its bright colors?
   a) Sunlight and tiny organisms in the sea water.
   b) Algae that lives inside the coral polyps.
3. What causes coral bleaching?
   a) Pollution, too much sunlight and not enough water.
   b) Pollution, and too many sea animals living in the coral.
4. What happens to the coral when there is coral bleaching?
   a) Fish and sea animals eat the coral.
   b) The coral dies.

3 Read and complete.

1. Coral reefs are ....
2. Coral reefs are important for our oceans because ....
3. Coral bleaching is happening because ....
4. We can protect coral reefs by ....

4 Read and complete. There are two extra items in the box.

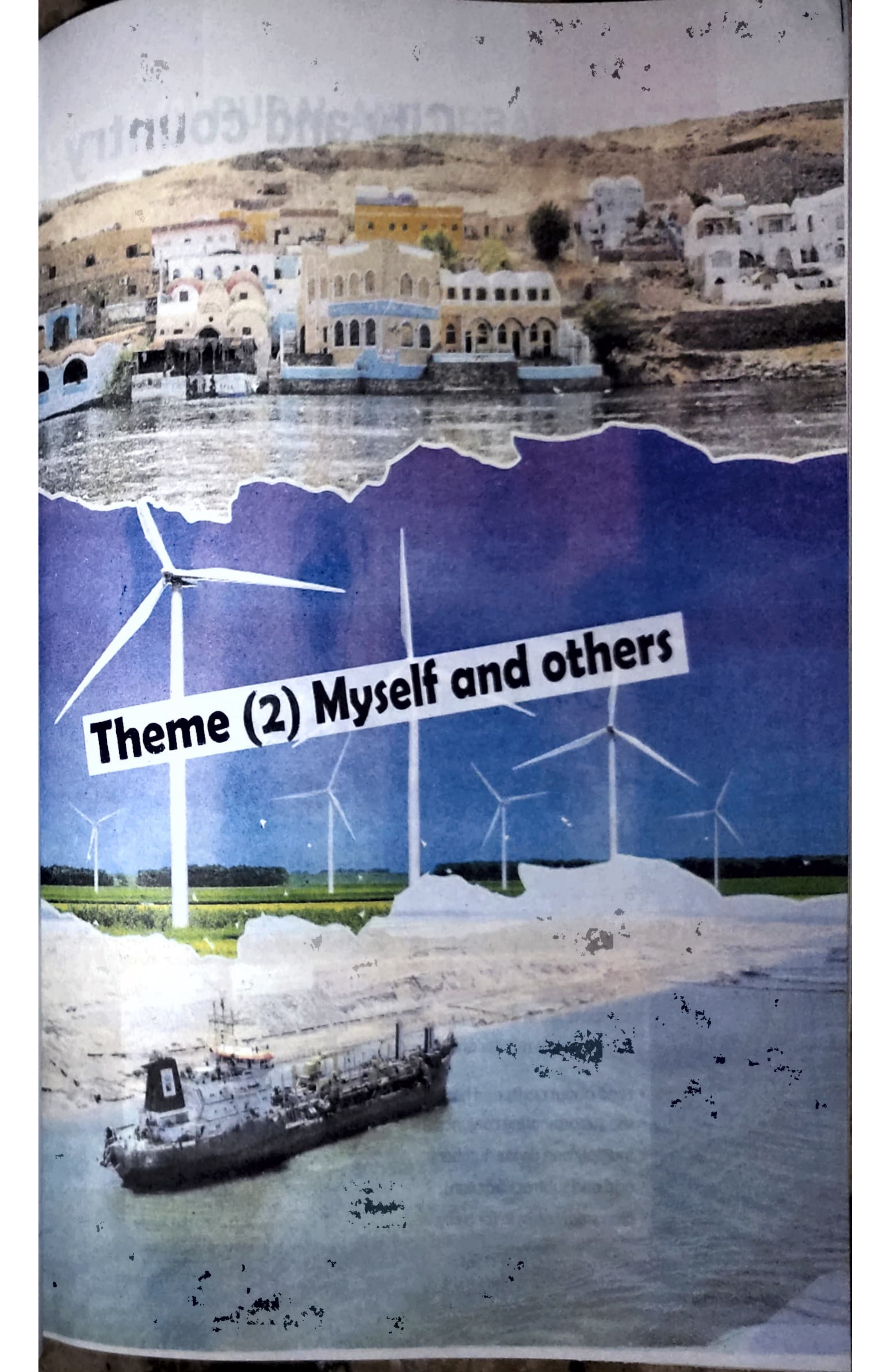
cooler - coral bleaching - coral reefs - global warming - less pollution - sea temperatures - serious problem - warmer

1. Some corals in the Red Sea can survive rising ....
2. The water in the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
3. Corals in the Red Sea don't have a .... with coral bleaching.
4. Scientists hope they can help protect some .... around the world.
5. We need to have .... in the world's oceans.
6. We also need to reduce .... to stop sea temperatures rising.

5 Answer the following questions.

1. What are coral reefs?
....
2. Why are coral reefs important?
....
3. What problems do coral reefs have?
....
4. Who is affected by coral reefs problems?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.


Theme (2) Myself and others



City and country

المدينة والريف

In this unit, the students will ...

- compare life in the city and in the country. يقارن بين الحياة في المدينة وفي الريف.
- form and use regular and irregular plural nouns. يكون ويستخدم أسماء الجمع المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.
- read about crafts and heritage industries. يقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.
- use subordinating conjunctions in sentences. يستخدم الروابط في الجمل للتتابع.
- multiply and divide numbers. يضرب ويقسم الأرقام.
- add and subtract fractions. يجمع ويطرح الكسور.
- plan smart growth for a city. يخطط نموًا ذكيًا لمدينة.



Lesson (1) RURAL AND URBAN PLACES

Listen and repeat.



densely populated

ذو كثافة سكانية عالية



pedestrians

المشاة



sparsely populated

ذو كثافة سكانية منخفضة



congestion

ازدحام





isolated

منعزل



workshop

ورشة



school

مدرسة



shop

محل

Help your child identify rural and urban places.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأماكن الريفية والحضرية.

Extra Vocabulary

city	مدينة	dense	
village	قرية	sparse	
metropolitan	عاصمي (من العاصمة)	traditional	
Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى	area	
busy	مزدحم	careful	
desert	الصحراء	like	
population	السكان / عدد السكان	environment	
rural	ريفي / قروي	inhabitant	
urban	مدني / حضري		



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	tell	يخبر	told
live	يعيش	lived	have / has	يمتلك	had



Important expressions and prepositions

want to	يريد أن	live in
tell about	يخبر عن	more than
a lot of	كثير من	have to
(be) going to + inf	سوف	in the desert
on isolated place	في مكان منعزل	close to

Lesson (1)

Look, listen and read.

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.





مرحبًا، اسمي فريدة وأريد أن أخبركم عن المكان الذي أعيش فيه. أنا أعيش في القاهرة الكبرى. إنها منطقة حضرية وذات كثافة سكانية عالية. هناك أكثر من ٢٠ مليون ساكنًا، لذلك إنه مكان مزدحم جدًا. يوجد الكثير من السيارات لذلك يوجد أيضًا ازدحام. إذا كنت من المشاة، يجب أن تكون حذرًا.

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated – only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.



مرحبًا، اسمي زين. سأخبركم عن قريتي. إنها ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة. حوالي ٧٠٠ شخص فقط يعيشون هنا. إنه أيضًا مكان تقليدي جدًا. إنه في الصحراء لذا فهو مكان معزول، أيضًا. ومع ذلك لدينا الكثير من الخدمات بالقرب من منزل عائلتي، مثل المحلات، وورش العمل ومدرستي.





Did you know?

More people live in rural areas than urban areas in Egypt.

يعيش عدد أكبر من الناس في المناطق الريفية أكثر من المناطق الحضرية.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zein lives in a ....
   a) city b) village c) town d) country
2. It's .... populated, only about 700 people live here.
   a) sparcely b) densely c) full d) complete
3. It's also a very .... place.
   a) local b) normal c) traditional d) final
4. It's in the desert so it's an .... place.
   a) located b) populated c) interesting d) isolated

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

shops - densely - million - Greater Cairo

Where do you live?

Waleed: I live in 1) ....

Khaled: Is it sparsely or 2) .... populated?

Waleed: It's densely populated.

Khaled: How many inhabitants are there?

Waleed: There are 20 million inhabitatnts.

Khaled: What services are there?

Waleed: There are 3) .... and schools.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I live in a/an .... environment. I live in Giza.
   a) rural b) urban c) village d) city
2. The population in Cairo is ....
   a) sparse b) little c) dense d) few
3. Ali lives in a rural environment. There .... a lot of inhabitants.
   a) are b) aren't c) has d) is

4. I am a .... I always go to school on foot.
   a) pedestrian   b) driver   c) farmer   d) pilot
5. Cairo is a .... area.
   a) metropolitan   b) rural   c) village   d) desert
6. There are a lot of cars in Alexandria. There is ....
   a) trees   b) congestion   c) fraction   d) digestion

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It is a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a) Greater Cairo   b) Tanta   c) Aswan   d) Giza
2. .... have to be very careful in the streets of Cairo.
   a) Pedestrians   b) Pilots   c) Doctors   d) Drivers
3. The underlined word "densely" is the opposite of ....
   a) sparcely   b) widely   c) curly   d) happily

Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Fareeda live?

5. How many inhabitants live in Greater Cairo?

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. do - live - **Where** - you - ?

....

2. live - areas - **More people** - in - rural - .

....

3. is - sparsely - **My village** - populated - .

....

6 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

services - sparsely - isolated - people

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's 1) .... populated - only about 700 2) .... live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an 3) .... place, too. We have a lot of 4) .... close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Where you live

Guiding elements:

(live - Greater Cairo - metropolitan)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

sheep	خروف - أغنام	person - people	شخص - أشخاص
donkey	حمار	woman - women	سيدة - سيدات
wife	زوجة	buffalo	جاموسة
goslings	صغار الأوز	goose - geese	أوزة - أوز

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

program	برنامج	onions	بصل	interview	مقابلة - حوار
several	العديد	copper	معدن النحاس	irrigation	عملية الري
lucky	محظوظ	coal	فحم	features	خصائص
historically	تاريخيًا	aluminum	الألومنيوم	resources	الموارد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
develop	يطور	developed
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
wonder	يتعجب	wondered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

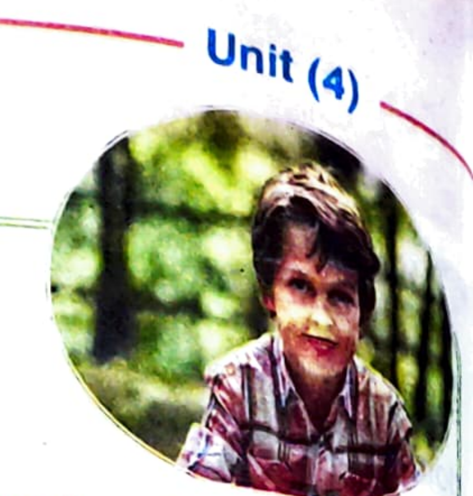
Present		Past
give	يعطي	gave
grow	يزرع	grew
have / has	يمتلك	had



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

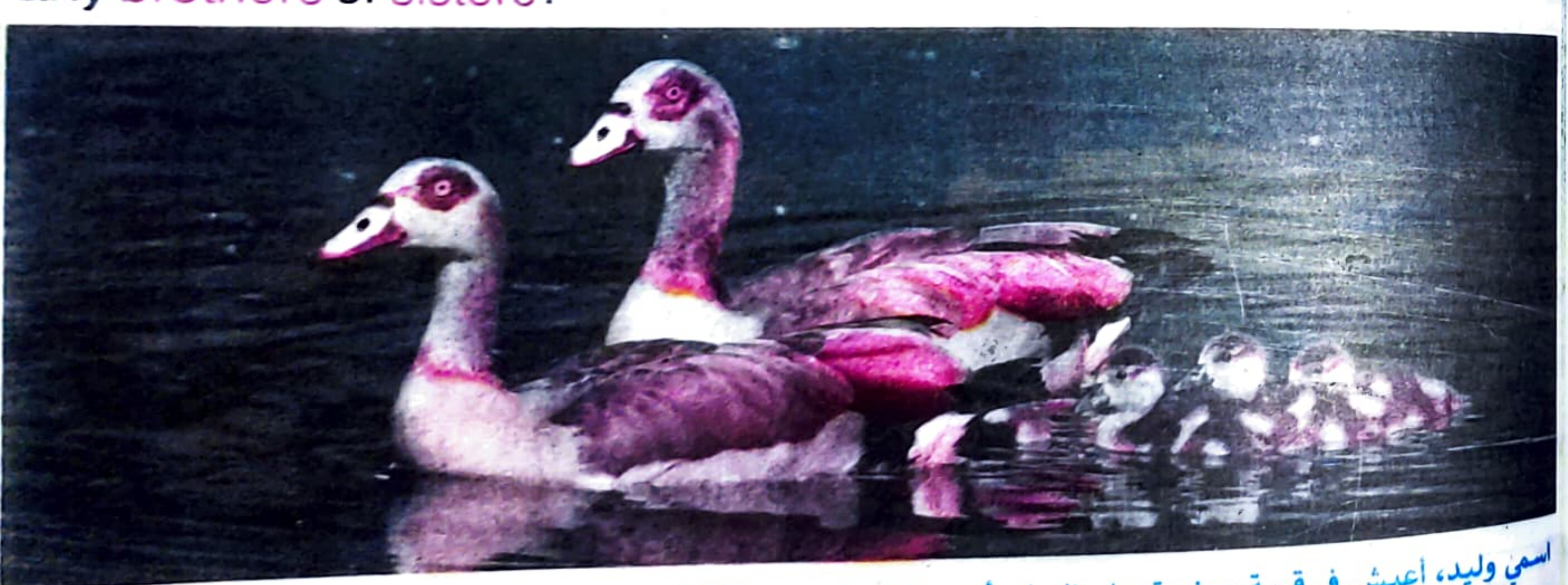
on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	half of	نصف
of course	بالطبع	grown up	شخص بالغ - راشد

Look and read.



My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family – my dad and my grandpa – and two women – my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters?



اسمي وليد، أعيش في قرية صغيرة على النيل. أبي مزارع. هو يزرع الطماطم و البطاطس و البلح والبصل. لدينا بعض الحيوانات أيضا. يوجد ستة من الخراف واثنان من الجاموس. يوجد بعض الحمير في قريتي، ولكن عائلتي لا تمتلك حمارًا الآن. يمكنك أن ترى القطط في الشارع، وإذا كنت محظوظًا، سترى بعض الأوز المصري الجميل في النهر. تعيش أسرتي في منزل تقليدي، يوجد سبعة أفراد يعيشون فيه. يوجد رجلان في عائلتي هما أبي وجدي، وامرأتان هما أمي وجدتي. وبالطبع هناك بعض الأطفال أيضا! أنا لدي أختان ولكن لا يوجد أطفال رضع لأننا جميعا بالغون. هل لديك اي أخوة أو أخوات؟

Help your child look and read about Waleed's life.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ...

Plural Forms

صيغ الجمع

A noun can be singular or plural.
To change a noun from singular into plural, we follow some rules.

1 Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers   sister → sisters

2 Nouns ending in: (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es)

buffalo → buffaloes   box → boxes
dish → dishes   watch → watches

3 Nouns ending in: (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies   city → cities

4 Nouns ending in: a vowel + y, we add (s).

donkey → donkeys   boy → boys

5 Irregular plural: The noun changes (There is no rule)

man → men   woman → women
goose → geese   child → children

6 Some nouns don't change.

a sheep → sheep   a deer → deer
a fish → fish

Note: يُسبق الاسم المفرد بـ a أو an

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I saw one .... in the river.
   a) goose b) geese c) a goose d) goslings
2. There are four .... in my family.
   a) man b) women c) child d) boy
3. We have some .... in the village.
   a) an animal b) animals c) animal d) bird
4. There is .... in the street.
   a) cat b) a cat c) cats d) dogs
5. My mom has two ....
   a) baby b) babies c) a baby d) child

2 Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1. donkey ....
2. woman ....
3. potato ....
4. buffalo ....
5. man ....
6. city ....
7. tooth ....
8. date ....
9. person ....
10. sister ....
11. baby ....
12. child ....
13. mountain ....
14. deer ....
15. goose ....
16. brother ....
17. tomato ....
18. sheep ....
19. bus ....
20. fish ....
21. family ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

Presenter : Have you ever wondered why cities develop where they do? As you can probably imagine, there are several reasons. Today we are talking to Dr. Hossam about this topic. Welcome to our program, Dr. Hossam.

هل تساءلت يومًا لماذا تتطور المدن حيث يحدث ذلك؟ كما يمكنك أن تتخيل على الأرجح. هناك عدة أسباب. اليوم نتحدث مع الدكتور حسام حول هذا الموضوع. مرحبًا بكم في برنامجنا يا دكتور حسام.

Dr. Hossam : Thank you. So, one of the main reasons is for food and transportation. Have you ever noticed that a lot of cities are developed near bodies of water? These can be rivers, lakes or oceans.

شكرًا لك. إذن، فإن أحد الأسباب الرئيسية هو الطعام والمواصلات. هل سبق لك أن لاحظت أن الكثير من المدن قد تم تطويرها بالقرب من المسطحات المائية؟ هذه المسطحات يمكن تكون الأنهار أو البحيرات أو المحيطات.

Presenter : So why are bodies of water important for cities then?

لماذا تعتبر المسطحات المائية مهمة للمدن إذن؟

Dr. Hossam : For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which gives people food to eat. Another important reason is that people can use them for transportation. If a city wants to trade its goods with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Another very important reason is that fresh water can be used for irrigation. Farmers need to water their plants, you know.

لشيء واحد، لديهم حيوانات فيها، مثل الأسماك والطيور، مما يعطي الناس طعامًا ليأكلوه. سبب آخر مهم هو أن الناس يستخدمونها للنقل. إذا أرادت مدينة أن تتاجر بسلعها مع أماكن أخرى، فيمكن أن يتم نقلها بسهولة إلى أماكن أخرى على متن القوارب. سبب آخر مهم للغاية هو أنه يمكن استخدام المياه العذبة للري. يحتاج المزارعون إلى سقي نباتاتهم، كما تعلم.

Presenter : Are there any other geographic features which make good places to start a city?

هل هناك أي خصائص جغرافية أخرى تشكل أماكن جيدة لبدء مدينة؟

Dr. Hossam : Yes, there are. Mountains are another place around the world where cities develop. Cities develop in the mountains because historically they are easier to protect. There are also minerals and good water sources in some mountains. The only bad part is that transportation is more difficult so they might be more isolated than cities near water.

نعم، يوجد. الجبال هي مكان آخر حول العالم تتطور فيه المدن. تتطور المدن في الجبال لأنّها تاريخيا يسهل حمايتها. كما توجد معادن ومصادر مياه جيدة في بعض الجبال. الجزء السيئ الوحيد هو أن عملية النقل أصعب لذا فقد يكونون أكثر عزلة من المدن القريبة من المياه.

Presenter : Oh, I didn't think of that. Are there any more reasons?

أوه، لم أفكر في ذلك. هل هناك المزيد من الأسباب؟

Dr. Hossam : Let me see. Well, a third big reason is because of natural resources. If there is a lot of natural resources in an area, a city may develop there.

دعني أرى. حسنًا. السبب الرئيسي الثالث هو الموارد الطبيعية. إذا كان هناك الكثير من الموارد الطبيعية في منطقة ما، فقد تتطور المدينة هناك.

Presenter : Can you give us an example? هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالًا؟

Dr. Hossam : Of course - there are a lot of them, but oil, coal, aluminium, or copper are a few examples. Forests also give us a very important natural resource - paper.

بالطبع، هناك الكثير منها، لكن النفط أو الفحم أو الألمنيوم أو النحاس أمثلة قليلة. توفر لنا الغابات أيضا موردًا طبيعيًا مهمًا للغاية - الورق.

Presenter : Very interesting. Thank you very much, Dr. Hossam.

مثير جدًا. شكرًا جزيلًا لك، دكتور حسام.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Waleed lives in a small .... on the Nile.
   a) town   b) village   c) city   d) country
2. Waleed's dad is a ....
   a) farmer   b) teacher   c) doctor   d) vet
3. There are .... sheep.
   a) four   b) five   c) six   d) three
4. You can see .... in the street.
   a) dogs   b) cats   c) rats   d) bats

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

farmer - job - tomatoes - village

Waleed : Hello, Ziad. Where do you live?
Ziad : I live in a 1) ....
Waleed : What's your dad's 2) .... ?
Ziad : He's a 3) ....
Waleed : What does he grow?
Ziad : He grows tomatoes and potatoes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are six .... on the farm.
   a) sheep   b) a sheep   c) goat   d) buffalo
2. I have one ....
   a) brothers   b) brother   c) sisters   d) cousins
3. How many .... are there?
   a) people   b) person   c) woman   d) man
4. My uncle has four ....
   a) boy   b) children   c) child   d) girl

Help your child deal with such questions.
طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. There .... a donkey.
   a) is   b) have   c) are   d) were
6. These are ....
   a) baby   b) boy   c) babies   d) girl
7. I have two ....
   a) sisters   b) brother   c) sister   d) uncle
8. There are seven .... in my class.
   a) boy   b) boys   c) girl   d) student
9. My mom bought four .... yesterday.
   a) goose   b) geese   c) potato   d) tomato
10. .... are big animals.
   a) A buffalo   b) A cat   c) Buffaloes   d) A tiger

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. six sheep - and - There are - two buffaloes - .

....

2. any - brothers - Do - or sisters - have - you - ?

....

3. lives - a traditional - My family - home - in - .

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

My father's farm

Guiding elements:

(big - buffaloes - birds - grows)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) LANGUAGE

Listen, point and say.



spin

ينسج / يغزل



dye

يصبغ / صبغة





carpet

سجادة



dyed yarn

غزل (خيط) مصبوغ



warp

السَّداة (مد خيوط النسيج)

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

artisan	حرفي / ماهر	weaving	نسيج
workshop	ورشة	guide	مرشد
wool	صوف	natural	طبيعي
synthetic	اصطناعي / صناعي	structure	هيكل
yarn	خيط	machine	آلة / ماكينة
loom	نول	geometric patterns	أشكال هندسية
dark colors	ألوان غامقة	skill	مهارة
craft	حرفة / مهنة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained	take	يأخذ	took
collect	يجمع	collected	make	يصنع	made
dry	يجفف	dried	weave	ينسج	wove
use	يستخدم	used	get	يحصل على	got
prefer	يفضل	preferred	let	يدع / يترك	let
design	يصمم	designed	spin	يغزل / ينسج	spun

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn about	يتعلم عن	pick out	يختار
have to	يجب أن / يضطر أن	make by hand	يصنع يدويًا
ready for	مستعد لـ	make it into	يصنعوا منه
the same	مطابق / نفس الشئ		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

Visiting a Carpet Workshop

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

زيارة ورشة سجاد في الصيف الماضي كنت أريد حقاً أن أتعلم عن الحرف المصرية التقليدية. لذلك، أخذتني جدتي إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج لكي أتعلم عن هذه الحرفة. قام المرشد بتوضيح كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد بينما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون.

First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then, they need to dye the yarn - that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.

أولاً، يقومون بجمع الصوف من الأغنام. وعليهم أن ينظفوا ويغسلوا ويجففوا الصوف قبل أن يستخدموه. يقوم الحرفيون بغزل الصوف ليصنعوا منه خيوط بعد تنظيفه. ثم يحتاجون إلى صبغ الخيط -هذه هي الطريقة التي تحصل بها على لونها. أعتقد أن الألوان الزاهية هي الأكثر جمالاً على الرغم من أن بعض الناس يفضلون الألوان الداكنة. يستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون فقط الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية، على الرغم من أن بعض ورش العمل الأخرى تستخدم الأصباغ الصناعية. أنا وجدتي نحب الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية لأنها تقليدية أكثر.

So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to boil the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

لذلك، الآن أنا أخمن أنك تتساءل كيف يقومون بصباغة الصوف. حسناً، لقد تعلمت أن النباتات والجذور المختلفة تزرع أولاً في قرية ريفية. ثم يستخدمون هذه النباتات والجذور لصنع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف. يجب أن يقوموا بغلي الخيوط مع الأصباغ وبعد ذلك يتركوه ليجف. وبمجرد أن يجف، يمكنهم أن يستخدموه في نسيج السجاد.

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

Subordinating Conjunctions

روابط التتابع

After بعد

فكرتين متتاليتين

e.g. After I went to park, I met my cousin.

Before قبل

e.g. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it.

As soon as بمجرد أن

e.g. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

so that لكي

لبيان الغرض أو السبب

e.g. My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshops so that I could learn about this craft.

Although = Even though بالرغم من ذلك

لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

While بينما - أثناء

لربط حدثين في نفس الوقت

e.g. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave.

Every time كل مرة

e.g. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

Lesson (3)

Notice:

When we start with the conjunction, we put a comma (,) between the two clauses.

إذا بدأنا الجملة بأداة الربط، نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I study hard .... I can get high grades.
   a) so that b) although c) after d) before
2. .... I got up, I washed my face.
   a) Before b) After c) Although d) As soon as
3. I always wash my hands .... I have my meal.
   a) before b) while c) so that d) although
4. They went swimming .... it was windy.
   a) so that b) as soon as c) although d) before
5. We help in the kitchen .... we have dinner.
   a) before b) after c) while d) so that

2 Read and complete with:

although - so that - while - before - Every time

1. Tamer couldn't eat .... he was hungry.
2. The parents watched their children .... they played in the park.
3. Layla is studying English .... she can be a journalist.
4. We had to chop the vegetables .... we cooked them.
5. .... we go to Alexandria, I remember our wonderful holiday there.

General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My grandma and I like natural vegetable dyes as they are more ....
   a) traditional b) modern c) classic d) fashion
2. You are wondering how the .... dye the woo
   a) roots b) artisans c) farmers d) teachers
3. The plants and roots are first grown in a .... village
   a) urban b) rural c) big d) far
4. Artisans use plants and roots to make .... dyes
   a) bad b) ugly c) useless d) beautiful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He does his homework .... he can get high mark
   a) although b) so that c) before d) after
2. They missed the bus .... they were earl
   a) before b) although c) after d) that
3. .... the yarn is dry, the artisans can use it to weave a carpe
   a) As soon as b) While c) So d) Before
4. Hany was playing with his toys .... his sister was watching T
   a) so that b) as soon as c) while d) although
5. They swam in the sea .... the water was col
   a) so that b) after c) while d) although
6. She got tired .... she ran to the par
   a) after b) while c) before d) so that
7. They collect wool from the ....
   a) cows b) buffaloes c) sheep d) goats
8. The .... spin the wool to make it into yar
   a) doctors b) teachers c) vets d) artisans

Lesson (3)

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. artisans - to - What - do - use - make - a carpet - ?

....

2. collect - the - They - wool - sheep - from - .

....

3. took - me - My father - the workshop - to - .

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, my grandmother took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The artisans make the wool into ....
   a) yarn b) yard c) craft d) card
2. The artisans clean and .... the wool before they use it.
   a) cry b) weave c) try d) dry
3. My .... took me to spinning and weaving workshop.
   a) grandmother b) father c) grandfather d) uncle

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did you go to the workshop?

....

5. Who explained how the artisans make the carpet?

....

Lesson (4)

CLIL: MATH

Multiplying & dividing numbers

ضرب وقسمة الأرقام

Multiplication الضرب

It is another way to add the same numbers many times.

e.g. There are 15 farmers in Lama's village. Each farmer has 35 sheep. How many sheep are in Lama's village?

$15 \times 35 =$ 525 sheep

Division القسمة

It is to separate something into equal groups.

e.g. There are 48 children in Sherif's class. His teacher wants the children to work on a project in groups of 6.

How many groups do the children have to make?

$48 \div 6 =$ 8 groups

Adding & subracting fractions

جمع وطرح الكسور

A fraction الكسر

It is a part of a whole.

e.g. The children are going to spend $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class reading in English, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the class speaking in English, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the class watching a movie. How much of the class will they spend on reading and speaking in English?

$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$ of the class

Lesson (4)

1 Answer these multiplication problems.

A. There are 21 weavers working in a weaving workshop. Each weaver can make 24 carpets each year.
How many carpets does the workshop produce each year?

.... × .... = ... carpets

B. Hany's family has 36 geese. Each goose has 8 babies, called goslings.
How many goslings are there?

.... × .... = ... goslings

2 Answer these division problems.

A. Amira's hens laid 240 eggs. She wants to sell the eggs at the market. If she can put 6 eggs in each box, how many boxes does she need?

.... ÷ .... = ... boxes

B. Amir grew 693 kilos of potatoes. He can put 3 kilos of potatoes in each sack. How many sacks does he need?

.... ÷ .... = ... sacks

3 Answer these problems with fractions.

A. Nagwa has a large loaf of bread. If she gives $\frac{1}{2}$ of the loaf to her grandparents, and $\frac{1}{4}$ to her parents, how much of the bread does she have left?

....

B. The children are going to spend $\frac{1}{2}$ of the sports lesson running, $\frac{1}{4}$ of the sports class jumping and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the sports class playing a ball game.
How much of the class will they spend running and jumping?

....

PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
location	موقع	port	ميناء
smart growth	النمو الذكي	planners	مخططون
neighborhood	حي سكني	transportation	وسائل المواصلات



Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
industry	صناعة	services	خدمات
Montaza Palace	قصر المنتزه	important	هام
Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	parents	الوالدان
wherever	في أي مكان	apartment	شقة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked
protect	يحمي	protected
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
have	يملك	had
buy	يشتري	bought



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

English	Arabic
as you might know	كما قد تعلم
the second largest city	ثاني أكبر مدينة



Read the text about Dina's city. Notice the headings of the paragraphs.

اقرأ النص عن مدينة دينا، ولاحظ عناوين الفقرات.

Alexandria

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

My city

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Amrya. There are 6 people in my family: my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either.

What I like

I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

أنا دينا وسوف أخبركم عن نفسي اليوم.

مدينتي: أنا أعيش في مدينة الإسكندرية. إنها مدينة جميلة على البحر المتوسط. كما قد تعرف أنها ثاني أكبر مدينة في مصر، بها عدد سكان يصل إلى أكثر من ٥ مليون شخص. و بها ميناء هام ويوجد الكثير من الصناعات هنا أيضًا.

الحي السكني الخاص بي: أعيش مع عائلتي في شقة سكنية في حي يدعي «العامرية». يوجد ٦ أشخاص في عائلتي: والدي وأجدادي، وأخي مجدي وأنا. شقتنا ليست كبيرة ولكنها ليست صغيرة أيضًا.

ما الذي أحبه: أحب مدينتي لأن لدينا الكثير من الخدمات. فلدينا مدارس و مستشفيات والكثير من المحلات حيث تستطيع شراء أي شيء تريده. يمكننا أيضا أن نستخدم الأتوبيس للذهاب إلى أي مكان نريده. واحد من الأماكن المفضلة لدي هو قصر المنتزه. يوجد حدائق جميلة والتي أزورها أحيانًا مع عائلتي. أنا أحب مدينتي كثيرًا وأتمنى أن تزور الإسكندرية يومًا ما.

Writing tip!

Writing longer texts

كتابة النصوص طويلة

In longer texts, there is ...

في النصوص الطويلة هناك

1- an introduction: it presents the general idea of the text.

١- مقدمة: وتقدم الفكرة العامة للنص.

2- The conlusion: it comes at the end to present a summary of the ideas.

٢- الخاتمة: وتأتي في النهاية وتقدم ملخصًا للأفكار.

When you use clear paragraphs, ...

عندما تستخدم فقرات واضحة

1- Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.

١- استخدم عدة فقرات قصيرة بدلًا من فقرة أو فقرتين طوال.

2- You can give each paragraph a heading (عنوان).

٢- يمكنك أن تعطي كل فقرة عنوانًا.

Read Wael's fact file about his city, Aswan.

Fact file



My city

City: Aswan

Location: on River Nile / south of Luxor

Population: 1,568,000 / not densely populated

Sites: Philae Temple / not a lot of industry

My neighborhood

Home: big apartment near the center of the city

Family: parents, grandma, brother Magdy, sisters Mona and Reem

What I like

Likes: driking lemonade and watching the boats on the river

Favorite places: Botanical Gardens / The bazaar

Good Services: schools, hospitals, shops, good transportation (train service to Luxor)

Project: A city smart growth plan

خطة النمو الذكي للمدينة

What is Smart Growth?



Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth:

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good public transportation and no cars.
- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops, markets, doctors, government offices, etc.
- There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

ما هو النمو الذكي؟ النمو الذكي هو طريقة لتخطيط مناطق جديدة في مدينة. يريد مخططو النمو الذكي أن يحموا البيئة ويحسنوا حياة الأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها. هذه بعض الأفكار وراء النمو الذكي:

- يستطيع الناس أن يسيروا إلى العمل او المدرسة.
- يوجد وسائل مواصلات عامة جيدة ولا يوجد سيارات.
- جميع الخدمات التي يحتاجها الناس قريبة من منازلهم: المحلات و الأسواق والأطباء والمكاتب الحكومية، إلخ.
- يوجد مساحات خضراء للناس لكي يستمتعوا.

When you are designing a smart growth plan, you should make sure to plan the following:

- عند تصميم خطة نمو ذكي ينبغي أن تتأكد من التخطيط لـ :

1. Housing — الإسكان
2. Places of work and schools — أماكن العمل و المدارس
3. Public transportation — المواصلات العامة.
4. Green spaces — المساحات الخضراء

Help your child ...

Design a smart growth plan to your city.

صمم خطة (نمو/تطوير) ذكية لمدينتك.



My city needs a smart growth plan. I'm trying to help. I have some ideas to improve the lives of people and protect the environment. Building more houses, better schools and wider streets will help people and save their time. Using bikes will help reduce pollution. All the services that people need will be close to their homes. Green spaces will make people feel happy and relaxed. I hope my city will be better.

Answer the following questions.

1. What will help people save their time?

....

2. What will help reduce pollution?

....

3. How will people feel if there are green spaces?

....

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

Do - many - Are - Alexandria

Asmaa: Where do you live?
Jana: I live in 1) ....
Asmaa: How 2) .... people are there in your family?
Jana: There are 5 people.
Asmaa: 3) .... you like Alexandria?
Jana: Yes, I do.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. should - environment - We - the - protect - .
   ....
2. good - is - There - transportation - public - .
   ....
3. walk - work - People - can - to - .
   ....
4. need - spaces - We - green - .
   ....

3 Write a text of **FORTY (40)** words.

Alexandria

Guiding words:

(beautiful - Mediterranean - largest - port)

....
....
....
....
....

Writing Corner

My city

My name is Nada. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city. It's the second largest city in Egypt. More than 5 million people live in Alexandria. It has an important port. There is a lot of industry in Alexandria.

My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Rod-El Farag. There are 4 people in my family: my parents, my brother, Ziad and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either.

Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet, first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

Smart growth

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in it. A smart growth cares for housing, places of work and school, public transportation and green spaces.

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك على كتابة فقرة.

Review on Unit (4)

Vocabulary

city	مدينة كبيرة	population	عدد السكان
village	قرية	location	موقع
congestion	ازدحام مروري	neighborhood	حي سكني
densely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية عالية	buffaloes	جاموس
sparsely populated	ذو كثافة منخفضة	dye	يصبغ / صبغة
inhabitants	سكان	warp	السداة (مد خيوط النسيج)
isolated	منعزل	crafts	حِرَف
metropolitan	عاصمي	yarn	خيط (غزل)
pedestrians	المشاة	spin	يغزل / ينسج
urban	مدني / حضري	artisan	حِرَفي
rural	ريفي / قروي	carpet	سجادة
services	خدمات	smart growth	النمو الذكي
traditional	تقليدي		

Plural nouns

We change a noun from singular to plural by adding "s, es, ies"

boy → boys   box → boxes   baby → babies

Subordinating Conjunctions

after	بعد	as soon as	بمجرد أن
although = even though	بالرغم من ذلك	while	بينما / أثناء
so that	لكي	before	قبل
every time	كل مرة		

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

- [illegible] ....
- [illegible] ....
- محل ....
- مدرسة ....
- ورشة ....
- ازدحام ....
- ذو كثافة سكانية عالية ....
- ذو كثافة سكانية منخفضة ....
- قرية ....
- مدينة ....

Lesson (2)

- شخص / أشخاص ....
- سيدة / سيدات ....
- جاموسة ....
- أوزة / أوز ....
- خروف / أغنام ....
- حمار ....
- زوجة ....
- صغار الأوز ....
- بصل ....
- فحم ....

Lesson (3)

- ينسج / يغزل ....
- سجادة ....
- السُّداة (مد خيوط النسيج) ....
- غزل (خيط) مصبوغ ....
- يصبغ / صبغة ....
- نسيج ....
- طبيعي ....
- هيكل ....
- مهارة ....
- نول ....

Lesson (4)

- الضرب ....
- القسمة ....
- الكسر ....

Lessons (5 & 6)

- موقع ....
- ميناء ....
- مخططون ....
- وسائل المواصلات ....
- النمو الذكي ....
- حي سكني ....
- خدمات ....
- هام ....
- شقة ....
- صناعة ....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I live in a nice ....
   a) town b) village c) city d) country
2. It's by the ....
   a) Nile b) sea c) lake d) ocean
3. My father is a ....
   a) vet b) teacher c) farmer d) carpenter
4. We play .... in the club.
   a) football b) tennis c) handball d) basketball

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

craft - spinning - traditional - so that

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian crafts. So, my grandma took me to a 1) .... and weaving workshop 2) .... I could learn about this 3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My city needs a smart growth plan. I'm trying to help. I have some ideas to improve the lives of people and protect the environment. Building more houses, better schools and wider streets will help people and save their time. Using bikes will help reduce pollution. All the services that people need will be close to their homes. Green spaces will make people feel happy and relaxed. I hope my city will be better.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My city needs a .... growth plan.
   a) smart b) lazy c) busy d) easy
2. I have some ideas to .... the environment.
   a) make b) ask c) protect d) destroy
3. All the services that people need will be close to their ....
   a) clubs b) schools c) banks d) homes

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What will help reduce pollution?

....

5. How will people feel if there are green spaces?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Rasha is great at English. ( )
2. Zeinab's friends are clever. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lobna .... things all the time and has good ideas.
   a) plays b) invents c) watches d) washes
2. Doha makes amazing ....
   a) art b) videos c) songs d) pictures

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I've got some .... on the farm.
   a) shop b) sheep c) ship d) sheeps
2. I do my homework .... I can get ready for the next lesson.
   a) while b) although c) after d) so that
3. I can see three ....
   a) man b) woman c) girl d) men
4. .... I go to Alexandria, I remember my wonderful holiday there.
   a) Every time b) Even though c) While d) Although
5. Tamer couldn't eat .... he was hungry.
   a) although b) as soon as c) while d) so that

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. have - any - Do - sisters - you - ?
   ....
2. weave - can - Artisans - carpets - .
   ....
3. the sheep - is - The wool - collected - from - .
   ....

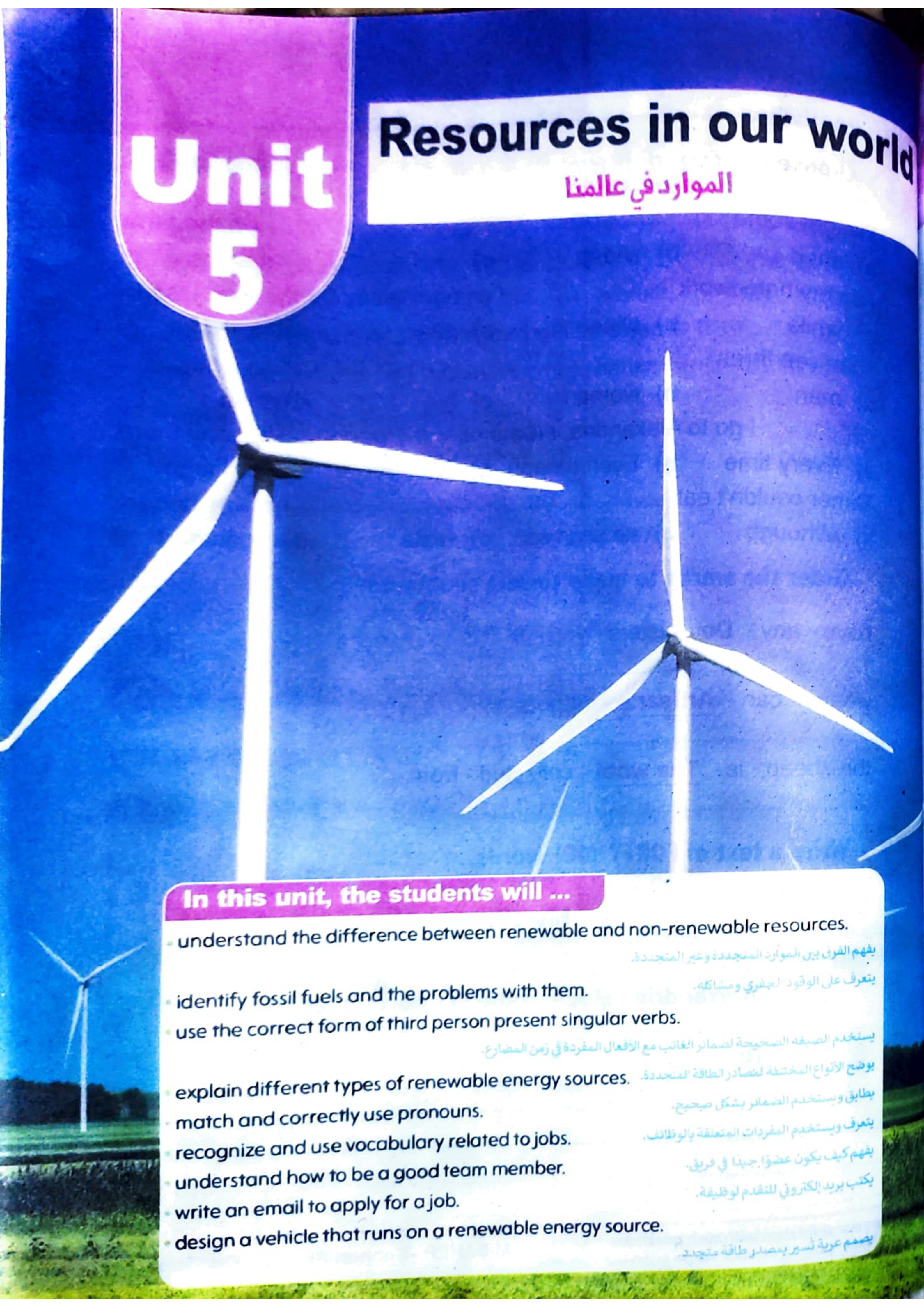
7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

My city

Guiding elements:

(Alexandria - Mediterranean - port - beach)

....
....
....
....
....
....



Unit 5

Resources in our world

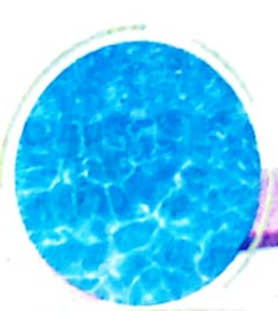
الموارد في عالمنا

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.
  يفهم الفرق بين الموارد المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
  يتعرف على الوقود الحفري ومشاكله.
- use the correct form of third person present singular verbs.
  يستخدم الصيغة الصحيحة لضمائر الغائب مع الأفعال المفردة في زمن المضارع.
- explain different types of renewable energy sources.
  يوضح الأنواع المختلفة لمصادر الطاقة المتجددة.
- match and correctly use pronouns.
  يطابق ويستخدم الضمائر بشكل صحيح.
- recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs.
  يتعرف ويستخدم المفردات المتعلقة بالوظائف.
- understand how to be a good team member.
  يفهم كيف يكون عضوًا جيدًا في فريق.
- write an email to apply for a job.
  يكتب بريد إلكتروني للتقدم لوظيفة.
- design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.
  يصمم عربة تسير بمصدر طاقة متجدد.

Lesson (1) NATURAL RESOURCES

Listen, point and say.



water
الماء



stone
الحَجَر - الحجارة



soil
التربة

wood
الخشب

Natural Resources
الموارد الطبيعية



metal
المعدن



mineral
عنصر معدني



petroleum
البترول



plastic
البلاستيك



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

materials	مواد	door handle	مقبض الباب
purpose	غرض	window frame	إطار الشباك
building	مبنى	gold	ذهب
bridge	جسر - كوبري	silver	فضة
forests	غابات	ground	أرض
nature	الطبيعة	different	مختلف
frame	إطار - هيكل	common	شائع



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs*		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
construct	يشيد	constructed	get	يحصل على	got
use	يستخدم	used	find	يجد	found
call	يسمى	called	wear	يرتدي	wore
raise	يربي	raised	grow	ينمو	grew
replace	يستبدل	replaced	drink	يشرب	drank
guess	يخمن	guessed	run out	ينفذ	ran out



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

use ...... for	يستخدم .... لـ	types of	أنواع من
look around	ينظر حول	made up of	يتكون من
(be) made of	مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)	use up	يستهلك
(be) made from	مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير بعد التصنيع)		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Look and read.

Our Natural Resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right – a natural resource!



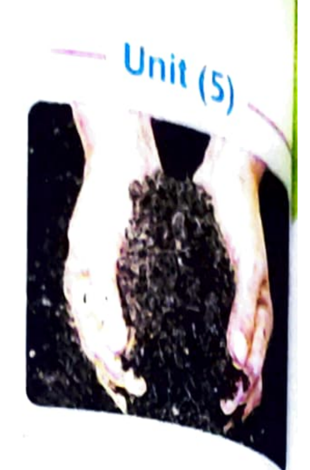
Can you find any minerals in your classroom? What about the door handle, the window frame, or the watch your teacher is wearing? Is part of your desk or chair metal? There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones. And they are all natural resources.

الموارد الطبيعية هي المواد التي نحصل عليها من الطبيعة. يستخدم الناس تلك المواد لأغراض مختلفة. إذا نظرت حولك في فصلك الدراسي، فمن المحتمل أنك سترى أنواعًا مختلفة منها. مما تُصنع مدرستك؟ نحن نستخدم الحجارة لإنشاء المباني والكباري وأحيانًا المدارس أيضا. على ماذا تجلس الآن؟ هل هو مصنوع من الخشب؟ الغابات والأخشاب التي نحصل عليها منها تعتبر مورد طبيعي هام آخر. هل يوجد أي شيء مصنوع من البلاستيك في فصلك الدراسي؟ يُصنع البلاستيك من البترول، والذي هو ... هذا صحيح - مصدر طبيعي!

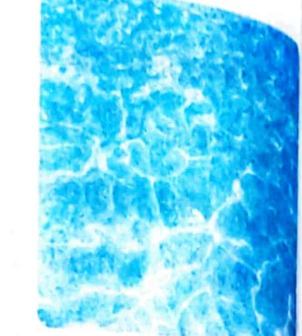
هل يمكنك أن تجد أي معادن في حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بك؟ ماذا عن مقبض الباب. إطار الشباك أو ساعة اليد التي يرتديها معلمك؟ هل جزء من مكتبك أو الكرسي مصنوع من المعدن؟ يوجد العديد من الأنواع المختلفة من المعدن والتي تعتبر أنواع من المعادن. الذهب والفضة نوعان شائعان. وجميعهم موارد طبيعية.

Help your child understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم الفرق بين مصادر الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة.



The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource.



Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

الماء الذي تشربه على الغداء مصدر طبيعي. من أين تأتي البطاطس التي نأكلها؟ إنها تزرع في الأرض وهذه الأرض تتكون مما نسميه تربة زراعية. لذلك نعم، التربة الزراعية أيضًا مصدر طبيعي.

بعض المصادر نطلق عليها متجددة. المصادر المتجددة يمكن أن تُستبدل بشكل طبيعي عندما تنفد إن الشمس والرياح والمياه المتدفقة أمثلة على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. ثم هناك مصادر غير متجددة. وهذه أشياء مثل المعادن و لبترول. إذا استهلكنا جميعها، لا يمكننا الحصول على المزيد منها على كوكب الأرض.



Answer the questions with a partner.

1. What are natural resources?

....

2. What's the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources?

....

3. What renewable and non-renewable resources can you find in your home?

....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... you drink is a natural resource.
   a) water b) petroleum c) mineral d) milk
2. Potatoes are grown in the ....
   a) water b) Nile c) ground d) air
3. Ground is made up of what we call ....
   a) air b) water c) light d) soil
4. Soil is a .... resource.
   a) man-made b) non-renewable c) unnatural d) natural

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

renewable - nature - made - wood

Mona : Are you good at science?
Aya : Yes, I am.
Mona : What is a door made of?
Aya : It's made of 1) ....
Mona : Is wood a 2) .... resource ?
Aya : Yes, it is.
Mona : Where do we get materials from?
Aya : From 3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... resources are materials that we get from nature.
   a) Natural b) Unnatural c) Nature d) Picture
2. We use .... to construct buildings.
   a) water b) stone c) wood d) plastic
3. Plastic is made from ....
   a) petroleum b) wood c) wool d) gas

4. Water is a .... resource
   a) non-renewable   b) new   c) renewable   d) nature
5. We get .... from forests
   a) plastic   b) metal   c) stone   d) wood

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is a natural resource!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a) natural resources   b) plants   c) petroleum   d) forests
2. We use .... to construct buildings
   a) petroleum   b) cloth   c) wood   d) stone
3. The underlined word "them" refers to ....
   a) materials   b) forests   c) schools   d) bridges

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are natural resources?

....

5. What is plastic made from?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Key Vocabulary



natural gas
الغاز الطبيعي



coal
الفحم



a fossil
حفرية



crude oil
البترول الخام

Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

dinosaur	ديناصور	oil well	بئر بترول	energy	الطاقة
mechanic	ميكانيكي	heating	التدفئة	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي
serious	جاد	problem	مشكلة	industry	صناعة
deep	عميق	power	طاقة	geologist	عالم جيولوجي
heat	حرارة				

climate change	تغير المناخ	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحراري	petroleum products	منتجات بترولية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
create	ينتج	created	turn	يلف	turned
dry	يجفف	dried	cry	يبكي	cried
generate	يولد	generated	raise	يرفع	raised

Help your child identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الوقود الحفري ومشكلاته.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
burn	يحرق	burnt	drink	يشرب	drank
go	يذهب	went	eat	يأكل	ate
come	يأتي	came	catch	يمسك	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	lie	يرقد / يستلقي	lay



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

turn into	يتحول إلى	wake up for	يستيقظ لأجل
around 80%	حوالي ٨٠٪	around the world	حول العالم
come from	يأتي من	end in	ينتهي بـ
is taken out	يتم استخراجه	raise his hand	يرفع يده

Read and identify.

A fuel :

is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.

الوقود: هو مادة نقوم بحرقها لإنتاج الطاقة أو الحرارة.

Fossil fuels :

- are a non-renewable resource.

الوقود الحفري: هو مورد غير متجدد.

- They were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs.

هو النباتات والحيوانات التي عاشت قبل الديناصورات.

Crude oil

- is turned into petroleum. الزيت الخام: يتحول إلى بترول.
- We get it from oil wells. نحصل عليه من آبار البترول.
- is taken out of the ground. يُستخرج من الأرض.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Coal and natural gas :

are used in homes for heating and cooking.

الفحم والغاز الطبيعي: يستخدم في المنازل للتسخين والطهي.

Global warming and climate change :

are serious problems because of fossil fuels.

الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ: مشكلات خطيرة بسبب الوقود الحفري.

Greenhouse gases :

- are gases collected in the atmosphere.

غازات الاحتباس الحراري: هي غازات تتجمع في الغلاف الجوي.

- are very bad for the environment.

ضارة للغاية بالبيئة.

- help to create global warming.

تساعد على خلق ظاهرة الاحتباس الحراري

- make the problems of climate change worse.

تجعل مشاكل تغير المناخ أسوأ

Listen, read and learn.

Fossil fuels

Professor Kamal: For many years, people around the world have burned fossil fuels. There are different types of fossil fuels, but all of them are non-renewable resources. We all probably use at least one of them every day.

الأستاذ كمال: لقد أحرق الناس حول العالم الوقود الحفري لسنوات عديدة. هناك أنواع مختلفة من الوقود الحفري. لكن كلها موارد غير متجددة. من المحتمل أننا جميعا نستخدم على الأقل واحدا منها كل يوم.

For example, oil wells take crude oil out of the ground, it is processed into petroleum, and then we use it in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Natural gas is also taken from inside the Earth and sent to some of our homes for cooking, and for heating homes in colder climates.

على سبيل المثال، تقوم آبار النفط بإخراج النفط الخام من الأرض، ويتم معالجته إلى بترول، ثم نستخدمه في سيارتنا وحافلاتنا وطائراتنا. يتم استخراج الغاز الطبيعي أيضا من داخل الأرض وإرساله إلى بعض منازلنا للطهي وتدفئة المنازل في المناخ البارد.

Help your child identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الوقود الحفري ومشكلاته.

Coal, this dark rock taken from mines deep inside the Earth, is used in industry, to generate our electricity, and in some people's homes for heating and cooking.

الفحم، هذه الصخور الداكنة المأخوذة من المناجم الموجودة في أعماق الأرض، يستخدم في الصناعة ولتوليد الكهرباء، وفي منازل بعض الناس للتدفئة والطهي.



But why do we call them fossil fuels?
Maybe you have heard of the dinosaurs?
Well, like the dinosaurs, fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. It's hard to imagine just how long ago though because they actually lived before the dinosaurs did. Over time, these plants and animals were buried deep inside the earth and changed into fossil fuels.

لكن لماذا نطلق عليهم اسم الوقود الحفري؟ ربما سمعت عن الديناصورات؟ حسنًا، مثل الديناصورات، كان الوقود الحفري نباتات وحيوانات عاشت منذ زمن طويل جدًا. من الصعب تخيل المدة التي مرت منذ ذلك الحين لأنهم عاشوا بالفعل قبل الديناصورات. بمرور الوقت، تم دفن هذه النباتات والحيوانات في أعماق الأرض وتحولت إلى وقود حفري.

It sounds like fossil fuels help us a lot, doesn't it? Well, that is kind of true. Fossil fuels have helped us develop into modern nations with great technological advancements. We have built cities with hospitals and universities and can easily travel through the desert in our cars and over the oceans in airplanes. But there is a serious problem. The problem with fossil fuels is that when they are burned, they produce greenhouse gases. These gases collect in the atmosphere and make the problems of global warming and climate change even worse.

يبدو أن الوقود الحفري يساعدنا كثيرًا، أليس كذلك؟ حسنًا، هذا حقيقي نوعًا ما. لقد ساعدنا الوقود الحفري على التطور إلى دول حديثة ذات تطورات تكنولوجية كبيرة. لقد بنينا مدنًا بها مستشفيات وجامعات، ويمكننا بسهولة السفر عبر الصحراء في سياراتنا وعبر المحيطات في الطائرات. لكن هناك مشكلة خطيرة. مشكلة الوقود الحفري هي أنه عندما يتم حرقه، فإنه ينتج غازات دفيئة. تتجمع هذه الغازات في الغلاف الجوي وتزيد من تفاقم مشاكل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ.

Help your child identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الوقود الحفري ومشكلاته.

Present Simple "with the third person singular"

زمن المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر الغائب المفرد

Form: He / She / It / Singular noun + verb + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He wakes up at seven o'clock.

e.g. She catches the bus to go home.

Spelling rules:

1- With most verbs, we add (s)

معظم الأفعال نضيف لها (s).

drink → drinks help → helps

2- Verbs that end in (ss, z, ch, sh, x, o), we add (es)

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (ss, z, ch, sh, x, o) نضيف لها (es).

pass → passes watch → watches go → goes

3- Verbs that end in a (consonat + y), we cross y and add ies

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y وقبلة حرف ساكن نحذف y ونضيف ies .

dry → dries study → studies

4- Verbs that end in a (vowel + y), we add only (s)

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف متحرك، نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays say → says

5- Some verbs change

بعض الأفعال تتغير

have → has be → is

Read and use the correct form of the verbs.

Gameela .... (wake) up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she ....(wash) her face. Then she ....(eat) her breakfast and ....(brush) her teeth. She ....(go) to school at 7:30. School ....(finish) at 2 o'clock. She ....(catch) the bus to go home. Then she ....(do) her homework. Sometimes she ....(help) her mom make dinner.

Help your child identify present simple with the third person singular. ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر المفرد الغائب.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... are a non-renewable resource.
   a) Fossil fuels b) Water c) Wind d) Sun
2. Oil, ... and natural gas are fossil fuels.
   a) greenhouse b) atmosphere c) climate d) coal
3. Crude oil is taken out of the ....
   a) sea b) lake c) air d) ground
4. Coal is used to generate ....
   a) electricity b) water c) wind d) air

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

natural gas - non-renewable - fossil - products

Hassan : What are the two resources of energy?

Omar : Renewable and 1) ....

Hassan : What does most energy come from?

Omar : It comes from 2) .... fuels.

Hassan : What fossil fuels do you use at home?

Omar : We use 3) ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. wakes - at - Gameela - up - 7 o'clock - .

....

2. does - She - after - her - lunch - homework - .

....

3. cities - with - We - have - hospitals - built - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Crude .... is turned into petroleum products.
   a) oil b) fuels c) coal d) gas
2. Natural .... is a non-renewable resource of energy.
   a) fuels b) oil c) coal d) gas
3. Fossil .... are non-renewable resources of energy.
   a) oil b) fuels c) coal d) gas
4. A .... is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.
   a) fuel b) energy c) well d) oil
5. We get crude oil from oil ....
   a) houses b) wells c) sky d) walls
6. Omar .... his hand when he finishes his exercise.
   a) raised b) raise c) raises d) raising
7. The baby .... when she's hungry.
   a) cries b) cried c) cry d) crying
8. Waleed's dad is a mechanic. He .... cars.
   a) fixing b) fix c) fixed d) fixes
9. Abeer sometimes .... TV.
   a) watched b) watches c) watch d) watching
10. My dad .... my grandparents every Friday.
    a) visiting b) visits c) visit d) visited
11. .... warming is a serious problem.
    a) Globe b) Global c) Nature d) Natural
12. Greenhouse .... are bad for the environment.
    a) juice b) water c) gases d) oil
13. Natural gas is used for heating and ....
    a) running b) cleaning c) washing d) cooking
14. Crude oil is taken out of the ....
    a) ground b) sky c) sun d) sand

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face. Then she eats her breakfast and brushes her teeth. She goes to school at 7:30. School finishes at 2 o'clock. She catches the bus to go home. Then she does her homework. Sometimes she helps her mom make dinner. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to ....
   a) father b) Gameela c) Younis d) mom
2. The family watches a .... after dinner.
   a) movie b) play c) song d) match
3. Gameela's family watches a movie after ....
   a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When does Gameela wake up?

....

5. How does she go home?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Fossil fuels

Guiding elements:

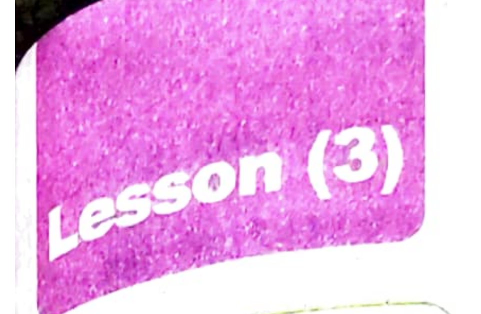
(non-renewable - oil - coal - global warming)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



RENEWABLE ENERGY

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

wave power	طاقة الأمواج	wind power	طاقة الرياح
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	tidal power	طاقة المد والجزر

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

solar panels	ألواح شمسية	truck	شاحنة	trip	رحلة
solar farm	محطة طاقة شمسية	sunshine	أشعة الشمس	dusty	مُتَرِّب
solar energy	طاقة شمسية	electricity	الكهرباء	different	مختلف
electrical energy	طاقة كهربية	engineer	مهندس	workers	عمّال
transfer of energy	تحويل الطاقة	lizard	سحلية	rock	صخرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs*		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
walk	يمشي	walked	tell	يخبر	told
ask	يسأل	asked	see	يرى	saw
collect	يجمع	collected	build	يبني	built
transfer	يحول	transferred	put	يضع	put
turn	يتحول	turned	run out	ينفذ	ran out
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	burn	يحرق	burnt / burned

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

next to	بجوار	look after	يعتني بـ
on the road	في الطريق	turn into	يتحول إلى
run out	ينفد	make electricity	ينتج الكهرباء
learn about	يتعلم عن	change from ... to...	يتغير من ... إلى ...
go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	put (his) hand up	يرفع يده

Listen and read.

Solar Panels in the Desert في الصحراء



Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually hot, sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine.

Now things are different. He sees lots of workers and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm.

At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question. 'What is renewable energy?' Seleem puts his hand up. 'Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out,' he said.

'Very good,' said Mr Ali. 'We need to make electricity. We can burn fossil fuels like oil and gas, but they will run out.

يمشي سليم إلى المدرسة كل يوم. الطريق بجانب الصحراء. وعادة ما يكون الجو حار، مشمسًا ومليء بالغبار على الطريق. السنة الماضـ
لم يكن هناك شيء في الصحراء. وكان سليم أحيانًا يرى سحلية. ولكن في معظم الأوقات كان يري فقط الصخور وضوء الشمس
اختلفت الأمور فهو يرى الكثير من العمال والشاحنات في الصحراء. إنهم يبنون محطة طاقة شمسية. في المدرسة، يسأل مدرس سليم
الفصل سؤالًا «ما هي الطاقة المتجددة؟» يرفع سليم يديه ويقول «الطاقة المتجددة هي من مصد... لا ينفذ». قال الأستاذ علي «جيد
جدًا» «نحتاج أن ننتج الكهرباء. يمكننا حرق الوقود الحفري مثل البترول والغاز، لكنهم سوف يـ...

Lesson (3)

We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. Tomorrow we will go on a short school trip to learn more about renewable energy here in Aswan.



'The next day, Seleem and his class are very excited. Mr Ali takes them to the new solar farm. They meet the workers.

Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are engineers.

One of the engineers tells the class, 'We will have more electricity in the city soon, and in your school too! We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes.'

... من مصادر متجددة مثل الرياح و المياه. غدا سنذهب في رحلة مدرسية قصيرة لنتعلم المزيد عن الطاقة

... في اليوم التالي، كان سليم وزملاؤه متحمسين جدا. يأخذهم الاستاذ علي إلى محطة الرياح الجديدة ويقابلوا العمال.

يضع بعض العمال ألواح شمسية في الصحراء، ويقود بعض العمال الشاحنات. بعض العمال من المهندسين. يخبر احد المهندسين

... وفي مدرستكم ايضا! لدينا الكثير من اشعة الشمس في الصحراء، لذا فهو يكون

... من الشمس و يمكننا تحويلها إلى كهرباء ...

Answer the following questions.

1. How is the weather in the desert?

2. Where does the class go?

3. Why is the desert perfect for a solar farm?

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Solar energy

Advantages مميزات

- Solar panels are easy to look after. من السهل العناية بالألواح الشمسية.
- Electricity from solar power is cheap. الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية رخيصة الثمن.

Disadvantages عيوب

- Solar panels are expensive. الألواح الشمسية غالية الثمن.
- We can't make solar power on a rainy day. لا يمكننا انتاج الطاقة الشمسية في يوم ممطر.
- Solar farms need a very big space. محطات الطاقة الشمسية تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا.

Read the text. Use the words in green to label the photos.

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy.

When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

لا يمكننا أن ندمر الطاقة. يمكننا فقط تحويلها من أحد أنواع الطاقة إلى نوع آخر. هذا يسمى بتحويل الطاقة. عندما نستخدم الألواح الشمسية لتجميع ضوء الشمس، تتحول الطاقة الشمسية إلى طاقة كهربائية. عندما تستخدم هذه الطاقة الكهربائية للتلفاز، هي الآن طاقة ميكانيكية.







Help your child learn about kinds of energy.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن أنواع الطاقة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can't destroy ....
   a) power b) energy c) plants d) panels
2. We use solar panels to collect ....
   a) moonlight b) lights c) sunlight d) starlight
3. The solar energy is turned into .... energy.
   a) local b) helpful c) natural d) electrical
4. When you use electrical energy for a ...... it is now mechanical energy.
   a) radio b) telephone c) television d) computer

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

cheap - expensive - panels - space

Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on a rainy day. Also, solar farms need a very big 1) .... However, solar 2) .... are easy to look after, and electricity from solar power is 3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Renewable energy never runs ....
   a) in b) on c) out d) of
2. The solar .... collect energy from the sun.
   a) tunnels b) panels c) boards d) fuels
3. Solar panels are ....
   a) cheap b) expensive c) simple d) different
4. We .... destroy energy.
   a) may b) might c) can d) can't
5. Solar panels are easy to look ....
   a) after b) by c) for d) on

6. Some workers are driving ....
   a) tracks b) rocks c) trucks d) tricks
7. The .... is a perfect place for a solar farm.
   a) desert b) dessert c) club d) hospital
8. Electricity from solar power is ....
   a) expensive b) bad c) rainy d) cheap
9. The road is .... to the desert.
   a) behind b) next c) in front d) under
10. The table is .... We need to clean it.
   a) fine b) clear c) dusty d) light

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. panels from Solar collect the sun energy .

....

2. electrical Solar energy into energy is turned .

....

3. need electricity We make to .

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Solar Power

Guiding ele.nents:

(renewable - solar panels - sun - electricity)

....

....

....

....



READING
LANGUAGE

Key Vocabulary

train	يدرب	talent	موهبه
career	مهنة	skill	مهارة
experience	خبرة	promotion	ترقي

Extra Vocabulary

wind turbine	محركات الرياح	junior engineer	مهندس مبتدئ
wind farm	محطة طاقة رياح	senior engineer	مهندس كبير
ability	قدرة	practice	ممارسه
option	خيار (اختيار)	university	جامعة
calm	هادئ	interview	مقابلة شخصية
nervous	عصبي	interviewer	محاور
twins	توأم	project	مشروع
knowledge	معرفة	presentation	عرض / تقديم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs*		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
present	يقدم	presented	hear	يسمع	heard
study	يدرس	studied	teach	يُدرس	taught
practice	يمارس	practiced	forget	ينسى	forgot

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
neither of	لا أحد من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شيء بشكل طبيعي
apply to	يتقدم بطلب إلى	at the end of	في نهاية
train for	يتدرب لمدة	at college	في الكلية



experience خبرة	knowledge or practice of doing something المعرفة أو الممارسة لفعل شيء ما
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well after practice and training القدرة على فعل شيء ما بشكل جيد بعد الممارسة والتدريب
talent موهبة	something that you do well naturally شيء ما تفعله جيدًا بالفطرة
career حياة مهنية	all of the different jobs that a person does in their life جميع الوظائف المختلفة التي يقوم بها الشخص في حياته
train يدرب	to teach someone how to do a job يعلم شخصًا كيف يقوم بوظيفة ما
promotion ترقية	when you get a higher position where you work عندما تحصل على منصب أعلى في عملك

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

Interviewer : Hello, Mariam. Thank you for coming to this interview today.

مرحبا يا مريم. شكرا لقدومك إلى هذه المقابلة اليوم.

Mariam : Hello.

مرحبا.

Interviewer : First of all, do you have any experience for this job?

أولا. هل لديك أي خبرة في هذه الوظيفة؟

Mariam : Yes, I do. I studied engineering at Cairo University. And I worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years.

نعم، لدي. درست الهندسة في جامعة القاهرة وعملت في محطة طاقة الرياح في كينيا لمدة ٣ سنوات.

Interviewer : Oh, that's good. Do you have any special skills?

أوه! هذا جيد. هل لديك أي مهارات خاصة؟

Mariam : I think so. I am very good at problem solving. I like to think of different ways to solve a problem, and then decide on the best option with my team. I also have good computer programming skills. I learned them at college.

أعتقد ذلك. أنا ماهرة جدا في حل المشكلات. أحب التفكير في طرق مختلفة لحل المشكلة، ثم اتخاذ القرار بشأن الخيار الأفضل مع فريقي. أنا أيضا لدي مهارات جيدة في برمجة الكمبيوتر لقد تعلمتها في الكلية.

Interviewer : And do you have any special talents? وهل لديك أي مواهب خاصة؟

Mariam : Well, I have always been a calm person. I was just born that way.

حسنا، أنا دائما شخص هادئ. لقد ولدت على هذا النحو.

Interviewer : Why are you interested in working at the Ras Ghareb wind farm?

لماذا أنت مهتمة بالعمل في محطة رياح رأس غارب؟

Mariam : I want to continue my career as a wind turbine engineer. I've worked at a turbine factory in Spain, and as you know at a wind farm in Kenya, so this would be my third job. This job will help me build my career.

أريد أن أكمل مسيرتي المهنية كمهندسة لتوربينات الرياح. لقد عملت في مصنع توربينات في أسبانيا، وكما تعلم في محطة رياح في كينيا، وستكون هذه وظيفتي الثالثة. هذه الوظيفة ستساعدني في بناء حياتي المهنية.

Interviewer : Excellent. Well, we have to train you first. That will take 1 month, and then you can start working. How does that sound?

ممتاز. حسنا، علينا أن ندربك أولا. سيستغرق ذلك شهرا واحدا، وبعد ذلك يمكنك البدء في العمل. كيف يبدو هذا؟

Mariam : That sound good.

هذا يبدو جيدا.

Interviewer : Do you have any questions about the job?

هل لديك أي أسئلة حول الوظيفة؟

Mariam : Yes, I do. Is there a possibility of a promotion?

نعم، لدي. هل هناك إمكانية للترقية؟

Interviewer : Yes, there is. You will start as a junior engineer. After two years, you can get a promotion and become a senior engineer.

نعم، سوف تبدئي كمهندس مبتدء. بعد عامين، يمكنك الحصول على ترقية وتصبحين مهندس كبير.



Help your child listen to the job interview.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى مقابلة عمل.

Lesson (4)

Possessive adjectives

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
I	my
He (Ali)	his
She (Amira)	her
It (cat)	its
We	our
You	your
They (children)	their



Rules of using possessive adjectives. قواعد استخدام صفات الملكية.

- Use his when the noun is a boy.
- Use her when the noun is a girl.
- Use their when it's not important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl.
- Use their when the noun is plural.



لاحظ أن (No one - Someone) نعاملها معاملة المفرد، لكن الضمير الذي يعود عليها يكون جمعاً (their)

Read and notice the possessive adjectives.

- Lara did her science project on global warming.
- She presented her project to the class.
- Wael did his science project on tidal power.
- He presented his project to the class.
- Both children presented their projects on Tuesday.
- Neither of the children was nervous about their presentations.
- Each of the children practiced their presentations at home.
- At the end of the presentation, someone raised ______ hand to ask a question.



Complete the gaps with the correct possessive adjectives.

(his - her - their)

Amir and Amira are twins. They worked together and did 1) .... science project on renewable energy. They presented 2) .... project to the class on Thursday. Amir presented 3) .... part on solar power. Amira presented 4) .... part on wave power. Both children did a good job in 5) .... presentation. Neither of the twins forgot what they wanted to say in 6) .... presentation. No one raised 7) .... hand to ask any questions.

Help your child identify possessive adjectives.

General Activities

1 Read and match.

1. a promotion
2. to train
3. a talent
4. experience

a. to teach someone how to do a job
b. something that you do well naturally
c. knowledge or practice of doing something
d. when you get a higher position where you work

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She presented .... project to the class.
   a) his b) her c) their d) she
2. Wael did .... science project on tidal power.
   a) his b) he c) her d) my
3. Both children presented .... projects on Tuesday.
   a) his b) your c) their d) her
4. Someone raised .... hand to ask a question.
   a) his b) their c) her d) my
5. Lara did .... science project on global warming.
   a) there b) his c) their d) her
6. .... did his homework after lunch.
   a) He b) She c) It d) They
7. .... washed their car on Friday.
   a) She b) He c) They d) It
8. Kareem ate .... sandwiches at school.
   a) their b) them c) her d) his
9. Rana got .... mother some water.
   a) her b) their c) its d) his

3 Read and circle the correct word.

Last weekend, Lara and (her - their) brother Youssef visited (her - their) cousin in Aswan. Youssef gave (his - her) cousin a present and Lara gave (his - her) cousin a nice card. When their cousin opened (his - their) present, he was very happy. It was a comic book!



TEAMWORK



Key Vocabulary

teamwork	عمل جماعي	sensitive	حساس	responsible	مسؤول
flexible	قابل للتكيف / مرن	attitude	سلوك - موقف	supportive	يدعم - مؤيد
collaborate	يتعاون	reliable	جدير بالثقة	show respect	يظهر الاحترام

Extra Vocabulary

individual	فردي	brainstorm	عصف ذهني	signature	إمضاء / توقيع
section	قسم	sincerely	بإخلاص	dear	عزيزي
success	نجاح	application	طلب	sender	المرسل
designer	مصمم	solution	حل	conclusion	خاتمة
positive	إيجابي	contraction	اختصار	imagination	خيال
advertisement	إعلان	problem solver	حلّال للمشاكل	Be open.	كن منفتحا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs*		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
design	يصمم	designed	feel	يشعر	felt
complete	يكمل	completed	meet	يقابل	met
admit	يعترف	admitted	find	يجد	found
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	get	يحصل	got

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lessons (5 & 6)

Important expressions and prepositions

Expression	Arabic	Expression	Arabic
write about	يكتب عن	apply for a job	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة
run on	تسير بـ	important for	مهم لـ
share with	يشارك مع	feel about	يشعر بشأن
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	instead of	بدلا من
rely on	يعتمد على	get worried about	يقلق بشأن
type of	نوع من	agree on	يوافق على
interested in	مهتم بـ	stay calm	يبقى هادئا
get upset	يتضايق	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
make sure	يتأكد	look for	يبحث عن

Listen and read.

How to Be a Good Team Member كيف تكون عضوا جيدا في فريق

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Here are 5 points to remember when you're working in a team.

العمل الجماعي هام جدا لنجاح أي مشروع. إليك خمس نقاط تتذكرها عندما تقوم بالعمل في فريق.

1) Communicate: Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too.

١) تواصل: شارك أفكارك ومشاعرك مع أعضاء الفريق الآخرين. ينبغي أن تكون منفتحا بشأن شعورك تجاه المشروع، تذكر أن تكون حساسا تجاه شعور الآخرين. ينبغي أن تكون مهذبا أيضا.

2) Collaborate: Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to others' ideas too.

٢) تعاون: [illegible] قد تكون لديك فكرة جيدة [illegible]

3) Be responsible: Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. If you're finding your role difficult, ask for help.

٣) كن مسئولًا: تذكر أن تكمل الجزء الخاص بك من المشروع. فأعضاء الفريق يعتمدون عليك للقيام بالجزء الخاص بك. إذا كنت تجد دورك صعبًا، اطلب المساعدة.

4) Solve problems: Instead of getting worried about problems, be a problem solver. Brainstorm many different solutions to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

٤) حل المشكلات: بدلًا من القلق بشأن المشكلات، كن حلَّال للمشكلة. قم بإجراء عصف ذهني للعديد من الحلول المختلفة للمشكلات مع أعضاء فريقك واتفقوا على أفضل حل.

5) Have a positive attitude: There might be some difficult times when working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful.

٥) ليكن لديك اتجاه إيجابي: قد تكون هناك بعض الأوقات العصيبة عند العمل معًا. ابق هادئًا ولا تنزعج. إذا كنت إيجابيًا، فستساعد نفسك وأعضاء الفريق الآخرين أن يكونوا أكثر نجاحًا.

Here are some more important ideas to remember when doing teamwork.

1- Be supportive : Listen to your team members. Offer them support and advice.

١.كن داعمًا:استمع إلى أعضاء فريقك. قدم لهم الدعم والمشورة.

2- Be reliable : Be on time for work. Work hard and finish your project on time.

٢.كن شخصًا يعتمد عليه:التزم بالوقت المحدد للعمل. اعمل بجد وقم بإنهاء مشروعك في الوقت المحدد.

3-Show respect : Respect your team members and be polite to them.

٣.أظهر الاحترام:احترم أعضاء فريقك وكن مؤدبًا معهم.

Help your child how to be a good team member.
ساعد طفلك في كيفية أن يكون عضوا جيدا في الفريق.



Writing skill

How to write an email to apply for a job

كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا للتقدم بطلب لوظيفة

1. Add the email address to the sender and the receiver.
2. Start with "Dear ....,"
3. Say what you want to write about in the main part.
4. End your email with "Yours sincerely,"

To : .... ← receiver's email address عنوان المرسل إليه

Cc : .... ← sender's email address عنوان المرسل

Subject : .... ← subject الموضوع

Dear ...., ← greeting and name التحية والاسم

main part الجزء الرئيسي

....

....

....

....

....

conclusion الخاتمة

Yours sincerely, ← ending النهاية

.... ← signature التوقيع

Help your child write an email to apply for a job.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا للتقدم لوظيفة.

Read the email to apply for a job.

Message Options

Calibri (Bo... 11

To rashahesham@gmail.com

job application

Dear Ms. Rasha, ◄ **greeting and name**

I am writing because I saw your advertisement

for the Tidal Power Engineer in *New Technologies* magazine.

I would be very interested in working for you as a tidal power

engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I am very

interested in renewable energy sources. ◄ **main part**

I could travel to Giza for an interview or meet online at any time

from Sunday to Thursday.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,

Help your child write an email to apply for a job.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بريدا إلكترونيا للتقدم لوظيفة

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Teamwork is very important for the success of a ....
   a) project b) homework c) object d) subject
2. Instead of getting worried, be a problem ....
   a) maker b) solver c) painter d) engineer
3. You should be .... about how you're feeling about a project.
   a) sad b) close c) relax d) open
4. Stay calm and don't .... upset.
   a) get b) come c) think d) run
5. You should be .... to your friends.
   a) tall b) short c) polite d) upset
6. Start the email with" ....
   a) Dear b) Sincerely c) Yours d) Subject
7. We are looking .... engineers to work in the company.
   a) in b) for c) of d) on
8. .... with the other team members.
   a) Communicate b) Solve c) Replace d) Support
9. .... your email with "Yours sincerely,".
   a) Start b) Feel c) Begin d) End
10. I saw the .... in a magazine.
    a) advertisement b) movie c) email d) letter
11. .... is very important for the success of a project.
    a) Individual work b) Teamwork c) Bad work d) Losing work
12. .... your ideas and feelings with the other team workers.
    a) Leave b) Forget c) Share d) Lose
13. .... sure to listen to other ideas.
    a) Start b) Stay c) Take d) Make
14. Show .... to your team members.
    a) movie b) place c) respect d) offer

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. clean - you - Are - in - energy - interested - ?

....

2. solver - Be - a - problem - .

....

3. should - You - polite - be - .

....

3 Read the job advertisement. Write an email to apply for the job.

We are hiring designers!

We are looking for engineers and designers to design cell phone chargers that run on solar energy. Are you creative? Do you have any experience of working in renewable energies?

Please write to:

Ms. Zahra Mansour, Mansour Design and Technology

zahramansour@mansourdesign.eg

To: ....

Form: ....

Subject: ....

Dear ....,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Our natural resources

Natural resources come from nature. People use them for different purposes. We have many types of natural resources like stone, wood and petroleum. Minerals are also natural resources. Gold and silver are two common ones.

Teamwork

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. You should share your ideas and feelings with others. Make sure to listen to others' ideas too. Stay calm and don't get upset. Be positive and help the other team members be more successful.

An email to apply for a job

To: kamal@mail.com

From: nadiasayed@mail.com

Subject: job application

Dear Mr Kamal,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies website.

I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar park for one year.

Yours sincerely,

Nadia Sayed

Review on Unit (5)

Vocabulary

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	solar power	طاقة شمسية
renewable	متجدد	wave power	طاقة الأمواج
non-renewable	غير متجدد	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
crude oil	البترول الخام	wind power	طاقة الرياح
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	tidal power	طاقة المد و الجذر
mineral	معدن	email	البريد الإلكتروني
petroleum	البترول	promotion	ترقية
soil	التربة	talent	موهبة
coal	الفحم	train	تدريب
metal	معدن	positive attitude	موقف إيجابي
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	responsible	مسؤول
wood	خشب	supportive	مؤيد / داعم
oil well	بئر نفط	career	حياة مهنية
plastic	البلاستيك	application	طلب وظيفة
stone	الحجر / الصخر	experience	خبرة
water	الماء	skill	مهارة
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
electricity energy	طاقة كهربية	team members	أعضاء الفريق

Present Simple "with the third person singular"

Form:

He / She / It / Singular noun + verb + (s / es / ies)

-s	-es	+ -ies
most verbs	verbs that end in ss, sh, ch, x, o, z	verbs that end in a consonant + y
know → knows	relax → relaxes	fly → flies
drink → drinks	watch → watches	study → studes

- Gameela wakes up at 7 o'clock.
- She brushes her teeth.
- He cries when he is sad.

Possessive adjectives

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
I	my
He	his
She	her
It	its
We	our
You	your
They	their

- Lara did her science project.
- Wael presented his project.
- Both children ate their sandwiches.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

الصخر / الحجارة	....	عنصر معدني	....
التربة	....	الخشب	....
المعدن	....	الماء	....
البلاستيك	....	مواد	....
البترول	....	أرض	....

Lesson (2)

البترول الخام	....	الغلاف الجوي	....
حفرية	....	صناعة	....
الفحم	....	مشكلة	....
الغاز الطبيعي	....	طاقة	....
الطاقة	....	حرارة	....

Lesson (3)

طاقة الرياح	....	أشعة الشمس	....
طاقة الأمواج	....	مهندس	....
طاقة المد والجزر	....	الكهرباء	....
الطاقة الشمسية	....	سحلية	....
شاحنة	....	طاقة كهربية	....

Lesson (4)

موهبة	....	خبرة	....
مهارة	....	ممارسة	....
ترقية	....	جامعة	....
يدرب	....	محاور	....
مهنة	....	مشروع	....

مسؤول	....	جدير بالثقة	....
مدعم / مؤيد	....	عمل جماعي	....
يظهر الاحترام	....	يتعاون	....
حساس	....	طلب	....
سلوك / موقف	....	حل	....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Teamwork is a very important ....
   a) work b) skill c) tool d) job
2. .... your ideas with the other team members.
   a) Send b) Play c) Share d) Put
3. Remember to .... your part of a project well.
   a) sleep b) complete c) solve d) feel
4. Instead of getting .... about problems, be a problem solver.
   a) tired b) sick c) upset d) sad

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sun - mechanical - sunlight - change

We can't destroy energy. We can only 1) .... it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect 2) ...., the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use electrical energy for a television, it is now 3) .... energy.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. For example, we get wood from forests. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....

a) natural resources b) farmers c) sun d) coal

2. When renewable resources run out, they can be ....

a) grown b) placed c) replaced d) rebuilt

3. We get .... from forests.

a) gold b) silver c) wood d) stones

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Name some renewable resources.

....

5. Where can we get natural resources?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. We make the patterns with three layers of cotton. [ ]
2. Zeinab has bad friends. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab and her friends have a great ....

a) vet b) teacher c) doctor d) farmer

2. Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome! come and .... us!'

a) play b) have c) join d) look

Activities

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The baby .... when she's hungry.
   a) cry   b) cries   c) cried   d) crying
2. Talia sometimes .... TV after school.
   a) watch   b) watching   c) watches   d) will watch
3. Both children presented .... projects on Tuesday.
   a) his   b) her   c) their   d) its
4. Toka did .... project.
   a) his   b) its   c) her   d) their
5. I .... TV in the evening.
   a) watch   b) watched   c) watches   d) watching

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fuels - natural - Fossil - are - resources - .

   ....

2. did - Sama - project - science - her - .

   ....

3. is - success - Teamwork - for - important - very - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Being a good team member

Guiding elements:

(non-renewable - oil - coal - global warming)

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 6

Let's work

هيا نعمل

In this unit, the students will:

- talk about different kinds of transportation. يتحدث عن أنواع مختلفة من وسائل النقل.
- make predictions about the future. يقوم بعمل تنبؤات حول المستقبل.
- understand future tech jobs. يفهم وظائف التكنولوجيا في المستقبل
- use punctuation marks. يستخدم علامات الترقيم.
- learn to use search engines on the internet. يتعلم كيفية استخدام محركات البحث على الإنترنت.
- create strong passwords and passphrases. ينشئ كلمات مرور وعبارات مرور قوية.
- write a well-organized paragraph. يكتب فقرة إنشائية جيدة التنظيم.
- create a business plan. ينشئ خطة عمل.

Lesson (1) TRANSPORTATION

Listen and repeat.



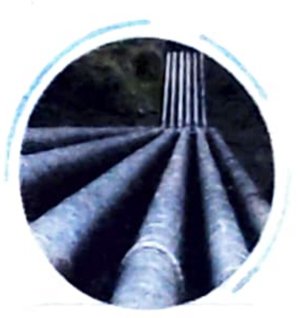
road
الطريق



water
الماء



Kinds of transportation
أنواع وسائل النقل



pipe
أنبوب / ماسورة



rail
السكة الحديد



air
الجو

Help your child identify and talk about different kinds of transportation.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع النقل المختلفة ويتحدث عنها.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

desert town	مدينة صحراوية	government	حكومة
electric train	قطار كهربي	ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	wide	عريض
airplane	طائرة	deep	عميق
comfortable	مريح	goods	بضائع
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	suburb	ضاحية المدينة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
travel	يسافر	traveled	sit	يجلس	sat
stop	يقف	stopped	build	يبني	built
use	يستخدم	used	understand	يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from	يحصل على الماء من	stop ....for	يتوقف لأجل
travel on a / an ...	يسافر بـ	193 kilometers long	بطول ١٩٣ كيلومتر
take a ferry	يركب معدية	far away	بعيد جدًا
by the window	بجوار النافذة	through a pipe	عبر ماسورة
have been to + مكان	زار / ذهب إلى مكان	per hour	في الساعة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.



Adam

My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's far away from where we live in Cairo - about 3,000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.

يعيش عمي و عمتي وأبناء عمومتي كلهم في الجزائر، عاصمة دولة الجزائر. نريد زيارتهم هذا العام، إلا أنها بعيدة جدًا عن حيث مكان معيشتنا في القاهرة - حوالي ٣٠٠٠ كيلومترًا. لذلك، سوف نركب طائرة، وسيكون ذلك ممتعًا جدًا! آمل أن يسمح لي والدي بالجلوس بجوار النافذة.



Amira



Our teacher was telling us about the new cities that people are building in the desert. She said that a lot of people will be able to live there very happily in the future. We didn't understand how the people can get water in the desert without an oasis. Our teacher explained that the government will send water from Lake Nasser through a pipe in the desert, just like they send oil. The people who live in the new towns will use the water for whatever they need!

كانت معلمتنا تخبرنا عن المدن الجديدة التي يبنيها الناس في الصحراء. قالت إن الكثير من الناس سيتمكنون من العيش هناك بسعادة كبيرة في المستقبل. لم نفهم كيف يمكن للناس الحصول على الماء في الصحراء بدون واحة. أوضحت معلمتنا أن الحكومة سترسل المياه من بحيرة ناصر عبر ماسورة في الصحراء، مثلما يرسلون النفط، سوف يستخدم الناس الذين يعيشون في المدن الجديدة الماء في كل ما يحتاجون إليه!

Help your child listen and read about kinds of transportation.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى ويقرأ عن أنواع النقل



Maged



I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric trains. The government will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour? That's pretty fast!

أنا متحمس جدًا لنوع جديد من وسائل النقل في مصر. إنه ليس سيارة أو حافلة أو قارب. إنه القطارات الكهربائية الجديدة. ستنهي الحكومة الخط الكهربائي الجديد في المستقبل. هل تعلم أن هذه القطارات يمكن أن تقطع مسافة ٢٥٠ كيلومترًا في الساعة ؟ هذا سريع جدا!



Lamar



We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship tomorrow.

نحن ندرس المصريين القدماء في المدرسة. اكتشفنا أن الناس لم يكونوا يسافرون برًا كثيرًا في مصر في ذلك الوقت. تقريبًا كان الجميع يستخدمون النهر للنقل. كانوا ينقلون بضائعهم في أنواع مختلفة من القوارب والسفن. كما سافر الناس في النهر ذهابًا وإيابًا. سأريك غدا صورة لسفينة توت عنخ آمون الملكية.



Fares



Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples in the Valley of the Kings? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation.
It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

هل سبق لك أن زرت مدينة الأقصر لزيارة المعابد القديمة الشهيرة في وادي الملوك ؟ كنت أرغب دائما في الذهاب لأنني أحب علم الآثار. لذلك، قال والدي أنه يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك في شاحنتنا الجديدة لقضاء إجازتنا. استغرق الأمر منا يوما كاملا. لكننا توقفنا لتناول الغداء والعشاء في مدن مختلفة. كان الأمر مثيرًا للاهتمام حقًا!

Help your child listen and read about kinds of transportation. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى ويقرأ عن أنواع النقل.

Language

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun	+ have	+ P.P (التصريف الثالث)
He / She / It / Singular noun	+ has	

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun	+ haven't	+ P.P ....
He / She / It / Singular noun	+ hasn't	

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)	+ P.P .....?
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)	

لاحظ وجود (ever) في السؤال

- Have you ever been on a train?
  - Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.
- Has she ever traveled on a ship?
  - Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.

Help your child identify and use the present perfect tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن المضارع التام ويستخدمه

Wh-question

Q.W + have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + P.P .....?

Q.W + has + (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P .....?

Where have you been? — I've been to Luxor.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

just	توًا - حالًا	already	بالفعل	yet	حتى الآن - بعد
ever	من قبل - سبق	never	أبدًا	since	منذ
for	لمدة				

Prepositions of transport

حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

We use (by) with means of transportation.

نستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات.

- by airplane - by bus - by train - by ship - by air - by water

When there is (a, an or the) before the means of transportation, we use:

عند وجود فاصل مثل (a , an أو the) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم.

1. (in) for transportation in which we can't move. (private transportation).

نستخدم in مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها. (المواصلات الخاصة).

- in a taxi - in a car - in our van

2. (on) transportation on which you can move. (public transportation).

نستخدم on مع الوسائل التي يمكننا التحرك فيها (المواصلات العامة)

- on a train - on a bus - on an airplane

Note : on foot ماشيًا على الأقدام

Help your child identify prepositions of transp

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات .

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We are studying the Ancient Egyptians at ....
   a) school b) club c) bank d) market
2. Almost everyone used the .... for transportation.
   a) bus b) bike c) river d) sea
3. They moved their .... in different kinds of boats and ships.
   a) houses b) animals c) goods d) cities
4. People also .... up and down the river.
   a) went b) visited c) played d) traveled

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

boats - airplanes - train - Aswan

Yesterday, I visited my grandma in Luxor. It's in Upper Egypt so we traveled on a 1) .... I was very happy to see the 2) .... on the Nile. People there are very kind. They travel on a ferry. I saw many 3) .... in the sky. They were beautiful.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They will send water to the cities through ....
   a) pipes b) roads c) bottles d) rails
2. We go by .... because it's more comfortable than driving.
   a) road b) rail c) foot d) car
3. The fastest way is by .... from Cairo airport to London.
   a) water b) rail c) road d) air
4. They sent goods by .... on the River Nile.
   a) rail b) water c) air d) road
5. There is a great bus service, so the easiest way is by ....
   a) road b) water c) air d) pipe

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

6. .... you ever traveled on a train?

a) Does b) Have c) Has d) Is

7. Have you .... been on an airplane?

a) ever b) never c) yet d) just

8. I have never traveled .... airplane.

a) on b) in c) at d) by

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. ever - you - Have - a river - taken - ferry - ?

....

2. Canal - The Suez - long - 193 kilometres - is - .

....

3. never - by - I've - traveled - ship - .

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Different kinds of transportation

Guiding elements:

(kinds - boats - airplane - trains)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2)

LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary كلمات

robot	إنسان آلي	vacation	إجازة
future	مستقبل	Mars	كوكب المريخ

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fuel	وقود	flying taxi	سيارة أجرة طائرة
humans	البشر	tech	تكنولوجي
career	مهنة	education	التعليم
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	preview	عرض / معاينة
government	حكومة	prepay	يدفع مقدما
podcast	ملف صوتي	pre-school	ما قبل المدرسة

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يذاكر	studied	buy	يشتري	bought
drive	يقود	drove	fly	يطير	flew

Important expressions and prepositions

travel to ..... for	يسافر إلى .... من أجل	live on	يعيش على

Future Simple Tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use (will + inf.) to make predictions about the future:

نستخدم (will + inf.) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل.

e.g. Children will take a flying taxi to school.

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + (will سوف) + inf.

e.g. Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.

e.g. People will travel to Mars in 2052.

Note:

'll = will

e.g. I will visit my uncle. = I'll visit my uncle.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريبًا
next (week - year - etc..)	(الأسبوع، العام،...) القادم	I think	أنا أعتقد ...
in the future	في المستقبل		
in + future time (2030 - 2052)	في + (وقت في المستقبل)		

e.g. They will travel to Aswan tomorrow.

e.g. We will travel to the moon in the future.

Help your child use the future simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط.

Lesson (2)

Negative النفي

Subject + will not (won't) + inf.

e.g. Robots won't drive trains next year.

e.g. My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.

Note:

won't= will+ not

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Will + subject + inf. ......?

- Will you travel to the moon one day?
  - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.
- Will he go to school tomorrow?
  - Yes, he will. - No, he won't.

Wh-question

Question word + will + subject + inf. ......?

- How will you learn English in the future?
  - I will learn English from the internet.
- Where will you live?
  - I will live in a smart city.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They will .... a train to Aswan.
   a) take   b) taken   c) takes   d) taking
2. Amir .... sit by the window. He doesn't like that.
   a) will   b) won't   c) is   d) isn't
3. How .... learn English in the future?
   a) you will   b) did you   c) do you   d) will you
4. They will visit the pyramids ....
   a) yesterday   b) tomorrow   c) last week   d) a week ago
5. Will he take a taxi? No, he ....
   a) will   b) won't   c) don't   d) doesn't

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the moon - to - Will - you - travel - ?

   ....

2. be - station - [illegible] - Mars - a space - on - will - .

   ....

3. won't - to - [illegible] - fossil - houses - fuels - their - heat - use - .

   ....

4. families - have - [illegible] - robot - a personal - will - home - at - .

   ....

3 Write the contractions? Follow the example.

1. I will =
2. We will not = ...
3. He will = ...
4. They will = ...
5. She will = ...
6. You will not = ...

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Punctuation Marks



comma	apostrophe	question mark	period	exclamation mark
_,_	'	_?	_.	_!

We use (,) to join two ideas in a sentence.
e.g. He can play tennis, but he can't swim.
نستخدم الفاصلة السفلي لربط فكرتين في جملة.

We use (') for contraction (الاختصار) of a word.
e.g. He isn't happy. (isn't = is not)
نستخدم الفاصلة العليا للاختصار.

We use (?) at the end of a question.
e.g. Will you visit Aswan one day?
نستخدم علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

We use (.) at the end of a sentence.
e.g. I love Egypt.
نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.



We use (!) to show strong feelings or emotions.
e.g. The new electric train is very fast!
نستخدم علامة التعجب لبيان المشاعر والعواطف القوية.

Help your child identify and use punctuation marks.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على علامات الترقيم ويستخدمها

 **Write the missing punctuation marks.**

1. We want to visit Aswan this year but it s very far away from where we live in Cairo

   ....

2. The government will build three bridges in Alexandria Cairo and Suez

   ....

3. I ll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship tomorrow

   ....

4. It really was an interesting video

   ....

5. We re studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. They are amazing

   ....



Writing tip!

We use pre- at the start of words in English to mean 'before'. For example, 'predict' means to say something before it happens.

تستخدم البادئة (-pre) في بداية بعض الكلمات بمعنى (قبل) فكلمة (predict) تعنى أن تقول شيئًا ما قبل أن يحدث.

e.g. preview (معاينة) / prepay (يدفع مقدمًا) / pre-school (ما قبل المدرسة)

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

take - will - fly - took

Reem : What will happen in the future?

Heba : I think people 1) .... travel to Mars.

Reem : What else?

Heba : I think children will 2) .... flying taxis to schools.

Reem : Will robots 3) .... airplanes in the future?

Heba : I think so.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They will .... kites.
   a) fly b) flew c) flies d) flying
2. People .... flying cars in the future.
   a) use b) uses c) used d) will use
3. I think, Marwa .... sit by the window.
   a) won't b) don't c) isn't d) hasn't
4. He will travel to London ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) a week ago d) tomorrow

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. take - to Aswan - Will - a train - they - ?

....

2. a ship - She - travel - will - on - .

....

3. people - in - Will - flying cars - use - the future - ?

....

Lesson (3) TECH JOBS OF THE FUTURE

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

tech jobs	وظائف تكنولوجية	advertisement	إعلان
UX Designer	مصمم تجربة المستخدم	search box	صندوق البحث
VR developer	مطور الواقع الافتراضي	robotics engineer	مهندس الروبوتات
VR headset	جهاز الواقع الافتراضي	technology	تكنولوجيا
application	تطبيق (على الموبايل)	search engine	محرك البحث

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

option	خيارات	spacecraft	سفينة فضاء
kids = children	أطفال	browser	متصفح
brainstorm	يقوم بالعصف الذهني	link	رابط
automobile	سيارة	agriculture	الزراعة
advertisement	إعلان	experience	خبرة
high-speed train	القطار السريع	host	مضيف
excitement	إثارة	manufacturing	التصنيع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
create	يبدع / يبتكر	created	design	يصمم	designed
cover	يغطي	covered	test	يختبر	tested
try	يحاول	tried	use	يستخدم	used

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يفعل	did	wear	يرتدي	wore
see	يرى	saw			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

short for	اختصار لـ	much better	أفضل بكثير
on the right	على اليمين	look up	يبحث عن (كلمة في قاموس)
specific words	كلمات محددة	at the top	في الأعلى

Definitions تعريفات

ad	short for advertisement	إعلان
search engine	a website that helps you find web pages from other websites	محرك بحث
look up	to search the meaning of a word in a dictionary	يبحث عن معنى كلمة في قاموس
link	a place in an electronic document that is connected to another document	رابط
browser	a software application that you use to look at pages on the internet	متصفح
specific	used to refer to a particular thing	محدد

Abbreviations اختصارات

tech	→ technology	ad	→ advertisement
VR	→ virtual reality	UX	→ user experience

Listen and read.

Hello and welcome to the podcast Life On Future Earth. I'm your host, Gameela Galal, and today we'll be talking about three tech jobs that people will do in the future.

أهلا ومرحبًا بكم في النشرة الصوتية عن الحياة على أرض المستقبل، أنا مضيفتك، جميلة جلال، وسنتحدث اليوم عن ثلاث وظائف تقنية سيقوم بها الناس في المستقبل.

The first job is a UX Designer. UX is short for User Experience. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the technology that you use, like web pages, apps, and machines like washing machines. UX Designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology. They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users.

الوظيفة الأولى هي مصمم UX. UX اختصار لتجربة المستخدم، ينشئ مصممو تجربة المستخدم تجربة إيجابية بينك كمستخدم والتكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها، مثل صفحات الويب والتطبيقات، والآلات مثل الغسالات. يهتم مصممو UX بالتجربة التي لديك مع التكنولوجيا، يتأكدون من أنه آمن وودى ومفيد لجميع المستخدمين.

Then we have VR developers. VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game? To do this, you have to wear a special VR headset that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

ثم لدينا مطورو VR . VR هو اختصار للواقع الافتراضي. هل تحب لعب ألعاب الفيديو ؟ هل سبق لك أن حاولت لعب لعبة على الواقع الافتراضي ؟ للقيام بذلك، عليك ارتداء جهاز VR خاص على رأسك. يغطي عينيك مثل النظارات. يتعين على مطوري الواقع الافتراضي إنشاء العالم الجديد الذي تراه عندما ترتدي هذا الجهاز، كما أنهم ينشئون التجربة التي تحصل عليها عند استخدام الواقع الافتراضي، ولكن هناك استخدامات للواقع الافتراضي أكثر من مجرد الألعاب المثيرة. المتاحف سوف تستخدمها، وستقوم الجامعات بتعليم أطباء وممرضات المستقبل بها أيضا.

Help your child read about tech jobs.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وظائف تكنولوجيه.

Lesson (3)

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing too. Well, that's all for today. Thank you for listening and remember to listen to our next show when I'll talk about the future of medicine.

مهندسو الروبوتات هم الأشخاص الذين يصممون الآلات المستقلة وهي مجرد كلمة أخرى للروبوتات. كما أنهم يختبرون الروبوتات التي يصممونها للتأكد من أنها جيدة في ما يفعلونه. سوف نستخدم هذه الروبوتات للقيام بالوظائف الخطيرة جدًا أو التي يصعب على البشر القيام بها. على سبيل المثال ، سوف نستخدم الروبوتات لبناء سيارات جديدة أو حتى القطارات عالية السرعة. من المحتمل أن تستخدم في الزراعة والتصنيع أيضا. حسنًا ، هذا كل شيء لهذا اليوم. شكرًا لكم على الاستماع وتذكروا أن تستمعوا إلى برنامجنا التالي عندما سأتحدث عن مستقبل الطب.

Listen and read.

Narrator:

Do you ever use search engines to look up information online? Most of us do. We sometimes think that these tools can find anything for us, but they work better when we help them. It's sometimes difficult to find the right information because there is so much information online and so many links. Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you reach safely and successfully.

الراوي: هل تستخدم محركات البحث للبحث عن المعلومات عبر الإنترنت ؟ معظمنا يفعل ذلك. نعتقد أحيانا أن هذه الأدوات يمكن أن تجد لنا أي شيء، لكنها تعمل بشكل أفضل عندما نساعدها. يصعب أحيانًا العثور على المعلومات الصحيحة نظرًا لوجود الكثير من المعلومات على الإنترنت والعديد من الروابط. فيما يلي بعض الأشياء المهمة التي يجب وضعها في الاعتبار لمساعدتك في البحث بأمان ونجاح.

First of all, use the safe search option in your browser. Maybe an adult already did this for you. If not, you do it. It will protect you from information that is not safe. You can also use search engines that are made for children. They will help you find web pages that are the best ones for you.

أولًا ، استخدم خيار البحث الآمن في متصفحك. ربما قام شخص بالغ بهذا بالفعل من أجلك. إذا لم يحدث، افعله أنت سيحميك من المعلومات غير الآمنة. يمكنك أيضًا استخدام محركات البحث المخصصة للأطفال. سوف تساعدك في العثور على أفضل صفحات الويب بالنسبة لك.

You can add the words for kids to your search. This will make sure that you find web pages that are the most interesting ones for you. For example, if you want to find out about high-speed trains, type in 'high-speed trains for kids'. You'll be surprised how great your results are!

يمكنك إضافة الكلمات الخاصة للأطفال لبحثك. سيؤدي هذا إلى التأكد من العثور على صفحات الويب الأكثر إثارة للاهتمام بالنسبة لك. على سبيل المثال، إذا كنت تريد التعرف على القطارات عالية السرعة، فاكتب «القطارات عالية السرعة للأطفال». ستندهش من روعة نتائجك!

When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads too. They are sometimes the first links at the top. They can also be on the right. These are not the links you're looking for, so ignore them. You might also see the word 'sponsor. This means that it is also an ad.

عندما يعرض لك محرك البحث نتائجك، من المحتمل أن ترى بعض الإعلانات أيضًا . في بعض الأحيان تكون الروابط الأولى في الأعلى. يمكن أن يكونوا أيضًا على اليمين. هذه ليست الروابط التي تبحث عنها، لذا تجاهلها. قد ترى أيضا كلمة «الراعي». هذا يعني أنه إعلان أيضا.

Make sure to read the options in the search box. For example,when you type in 'agriculture', the search box will show you a list of options such as" culture meaning, agriculture jobs, and agriculture Egypt'. Choose the option that you need, and not just the first one you see.

تأكد من قراءة الخيارات في مربع البحث. على سبيل المثال، عندما تكتب «الزراعة»، سيظهر لك مربع البحث قائمة بالخيارات مثل «معنى الزراعة، وظائف الزراعة، والزراعة في مصر». اختر الخيار الذي تريده، وليس فقط الخيار الأول الذي تراه.

Lesson (3)

Finally, use specific words for your searches. If you want to find out about how people use the desert for agriculture in Egypt, type in 'agriculture Egypt desert'. To make your search even more specific, you can use quotation marks around the words. The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.

أخيرًا، استخدم كلمات محددة في عمليات البحث الخاصة بك. إذا كنت تريد معرفة كيفية استخدام الناس للصحراء للزراعة في مصر، فاكتب «زراعة صحراء مصر». لجعل البحث أكثر تحديدًا، يمكنك استخدام علامات الاقتباس حول الكلمات. سيتفهم محرك البحث أنك تريد نتائج محددة للغاية.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

robots - tech - spacecrafts - jobs

Adel : What kind of tech jobs do people do now?

Ayman : They design 1) ....

Adel : What kind of tech 2) ....will people do in the future?

Ayman : They will work in space.

Adel : Do you like working with 3) .... ?

Ayman : Yes, I do.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. "Ad" is short form for ....
   a) admire b) advice c) advertisement d) adult
2. .... is short for Virtual Reality.
   a) VR b) XR c) AD d) Tech
3. People will use .... on farms, in factories, and in schools.
   a) robots b) rockets c) planes d) ships

4. "UX" is short for .... Experience.
   a) Umbrella   b) Using   c) Under   d) User
5. To get the best search results, use .... words.
   a) unknown   b) common   c) specific   d) ordinary
6. Choose the .... option in the search box.
   a) worst   b) best   c) least   d) tallest
7. There are special .... engines for children.
   a) search   b) mouse   c) quiz   d) competition
8. You should use the .... search option in your browser.
   a) unsafe   b) bad   c) false   d) safe
9. People .... spacecrafts.
   a) write   b) design   c) do   d) read
10. In the future, people will travel to ....
   a) space   b) desert   c) home   d) farms
11. The links can be .... the right.
   a) in   b) on   c) at   d) of
12. If you want to know the meaning of a word, look it ....
   a) on   b) of   c) up   d) in
13. "An automatic machine" is another word for a ....
   a) animal   b) bird   c) club   d) robot
14. "Tech" is short for ....
   a) medicine   b) dictionary   c) technology   d) machine

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a website - A search - is - engine - .

....

2. build - People - water - cities - will - under - .

....

3. spacecraft design - People - space - to - into - travel - .

....

esson (4)

CLIL: ICT

PASSWORDS AND PASSPHRASES

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

assword	كلمة مرور	password code	شفرة المرور
assphrase	عبارة مرور	address	عنوان

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ersonal information	معلومات شخصية	obvious	ملحوظ / واضح
egular	منتظم / عادي	account	حساب
ymbol = character	رمز	capital letters	حروف كبيرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ıdd	يضيف	added	crea[illegible]	ينشئ	[illegible]d

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hink	يفكر	thought	tell	يخبر	told
choose	يختار	chose	make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

create a password	ينشئ كلمة مرور	first of all	أولًا
mean something for you	تعني شيئًا بالنسبة لك	you like best	تحبه أكثر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look, listen and read.

How to Create Strong Passwords and Passphrases

كيف تنشئ كلمات مرور وعبارات مرور قوية

First of all ...

- Don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses.

ولا...

- لا تستخدم معلومات شخصية مثل الأسماء أو أعياد الميلاد أو أرقام التليفون أو العناوين.



- Don't use easy or obvious words, like Password or Computer, or series of numbers, like 1234.

لا تستخدم كلمات سهلة أو واضحة مثل كلمة المرور، أو كمبيوتر أو سلسلة من الأرقام، مثل ١٢٣٤.

- Don't use less than 10 characters.

لا تستخدم أقل من ١٠ رموز.

- Don't use the same password for different accounts. And don't tell your friends your passwords.

لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور لحسابات مختلفة. ولا تخبر أصدقائك بكلمات المرور الخاصة بك.

Create a passphrase

إنشاء عبارة مرور

Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.

عبارات المرور أكثر أمانًا من كلمات المرور العادية.

1- Choose four different words that you can remember:

mouseferryamazingfootball

١- اختر أربع كلمات مختلفة يمكن أن تتذكرها.

2- Add spaces to make it strong: mouse ferry amazing football

٢- أضف مسافات لجعلها أقوى.

3- Use some capital letters: mouse FERRY amazing football

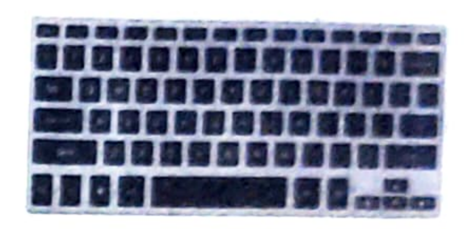
٣- استخدم بعض الحروف الكبيرة.

Help your child create strong passwords or passphrases.

ساعد طفلك أن ينشئ كلمات أو عبارات مرور قوية.

Lesson (4)

Create a personal passcode — إنشاء كلمة مرور شخصية



1) Think of your favorite color: green
2) Add a number: green87
3) Add your favorite school subject:
   green87science
4) Add a symbol: green87$science

١- فكر في لونك المفضل.

٢- أضف رقم.

٣- أضف المادة الدراسية المفضلة لك.

٤- أضف رمز.

Create a password sentence — إنشاء جملة مرور

1) Think of a sentence that means something for you:
   My beautiful pet cat is named Bes
2) Use the first letter of each word: MbpcinB
3) Add numbers and characters you can remember: MbpcinB*49&

١- فكر في جملة تعني شيئًا ما بالنسبة لك.

٢- استخدم الحرف الأول من كل كلمة.

٣- أضف أرقام وحروف يمكنك تذكرها.

Use the information above to create your own pretend passwords and passphrases:



- Create a strong passphrase.

....

- Create a strong personal passcode.

....

- Create a strong password sentence.

....

Help your child create strong passwords or passphrases.

ساعد طفلك أن ينشئ كلمات أو عبارات مرور قوية.

General Activities

1 Read and match.

1. Don't use personal
2. Don't tell
3. Don't use the same

a. password for different accounts.
b. information like names.
c. your friends your passwords.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Don't use .... information like names or addresses.
   a) person b) personal c) special d) secret
2. Don't use easy or .... words.
   a) difficult b) hard c) obvious d) different
3. Don't use less than .... characters.
   a) four b) ten c) eight d) seven

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. capital - Use - for - letters - a passphrase - .

....

2. make - stronger - Add - to - it - spaces - .

....

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Passwords and passphrases

Guiding elements:

(personal - obvious - characters - spaces)

....

....

....

....

WRITING PROJECT

Vocabulary كلمات

relaxing	مريح	environment	البيئة
huge	ضخم	entrepreneur	رائد أعمال
container ship	سفينة حاويات	side	جانب
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	container	حاوية
the land	اليابسة	ships captain	قبطان سفينة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
wave	يُلوح	waved
wait	ينتظر	waited
laugh	يضحك	laughed

Irregular verbs

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
come	يأتي	came
drive	يقود	drove

Important expressions and prepositions

look out of	ينظر للخارج من	have to	يجب أن
go along	يسير بمحاذاة	one day	ذات يوم
think about	يفكر في	travel past	يسافر مارًا بـ
work on	يعمل في	come to	يصل إلى
go through	يسير عبر	wait for	ينتظر
hard work	عمل جاد	come back to	يعود إلى
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	learn about	يتعلم عن

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read

A fun job!

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a ship's captain!' thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job'.

Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.



One day, Heba's father said, 'My friend, Amr, works on a container ship. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and wave at him".

Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

'Where is the ship going?' asked Heba.

'You can ask Amr next week,' answered her father. 'He will come and visit us then".

When Amr came to visit Heba, she had a long list of questions to ask him. He laughed and agreed to answer them all.

'I was on the ship when it went through the canal,' he said.

'Then I came back onto the land, and the ship went to France.

نظرت هبة خارج نافذة منزل عائلتها على السفن التي تسير على امتداد قناة السويس. كانت السفن كبيرة جدًا. «بالتأكيد أن الأمر ممتع جدًا أن تكون قبطان سفينة ! فكرت هبة «إن السفينة تتحرك ببطء شديد أعتقد أنها وظيفة مريحة». أحبت هبة مشاهدة السفن. كانت في الغالب تشاهدها مع أصدقائها. كانت تحب التفكير من أين تأتي السفن. وفي أحد الأيام، قال والد هبة «صديقي عمرو يعمل في سفينة حاويات. سيمر بجانب منزلنا اليوم. لنذهب ونلوّح له». ذهبت هبة وعائلتها إلى جانب قناة السويس وانتظروا سفينة عمرو. لقد كانت ضخمة وعليها مئات الحاويات. سألت هبة «إلى أين تذهب السفينة؟» أجاب الأب «يمكنك أن تسألي عمرو الأسبوع القادم سيأتي ويزورنا حينها». عندما جاء عمرو لزيارة هبة، كان معها قائمة طويلة من الأسئلة لتطرحها عليه. ضحك ووافق على الرد عليهم جميعًا وقال. «لقد كنت علي متن السفينة عندما مرت عبر القناة، ثم عدت إلى اليابسة وذهبت السفينة إلى فرنسا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

came from China. There were lots of toys and clothes in the containers.'

s it fun on the ship?' asked Heba.

t's very hard work!' answered Amr. 'The captain has to drive the huge ship

or a long time. The ship has to be straight.

ometimes it is very difficult when it is windy.

Vould you like to come and visit a ship one day?'

Oh, yes, please!' answered Heba.

لقد جاءت من الصين. كان هناك الكثير من ألعاب الأطفال والملابس في الحاويات». سألت هبة «هل الأمر ممتع في السفينة؟». أجا عمرو «إنه عمل شاق جدًا! على القبطان أن يقود السفينة الضخمة لمدة طويلة. يجب أن تسير السفينة بشكل مستقيم. أحيانًا يكو الأمر صعبًا جدًا عندما يكون الجو عاصف. أتودين أن تأتي وتزوري سفينة يومًا ما؟» أجابت هبة «أوه نعم من فضلك!».

ead and put (✓) or (x).

The ships were going along the River Nile. (   )

Heba loved watching ships. (   )

Heba and her family waited for Amr's ship. (   )

The captain has to drive the huge ship for a short time. (   )

Listen and read.

"The Young Entrepreneurs" رواد الأعمال الشباب

n entrepreneur is someone who starts a new business. In this roject, you are going to work with a group of classmates and start their own usiness.

irst, you need to decide what goods you will sell, or what services you will ffer.

hen, you have to decide where you will sell your goods or offer your services.

inally, you will make a poster to help explain your business plan.

رائد الأعمال هو الشخص الذي يبدأ عمل جديد. في هذا المشروع ستعمل مع مجموعة من زملاء الدراسة وتبدأ عملك الخاص. أولاً، عل أن تقرر السلع التي سوف تبيعها أو الخدمات التي ستقدمها. بعد ذلك، عليك أن تقرر المكان الذي ستبيع فيه سلعك أو تقدم خدما أخيرًا ستقوم بعمل ملصق للمساعدة في شرح خطة مشروعك التجاري.

lp your child create a business.

ساعد طفلك أن يبتكر خطة مشروع تجاري



How to write a paragraph

طريقة كتابة فقرة

1. Brainstorm some ideas.
   قم بعصف ذهني لبعض الأفكار.
2. Do research to find out facts about the topic.
   قم بإجراء بحث لمعرفة حقائق عن الموضوع.
3. Put your ideas in order.
   قم بترتيب أفكارك.
4. Write an introduction sentence.
   اكتب جملة افتتاحية.
5. Write the main information of the paragraph.
   اكتب المعلومات الأساسية للفقرة.
6. Write a conclusion sentence.
   اكتب جملة ختامية.

Model

How can people transport natural resources across a desert

People who live in the desert try to keep their environment clean, so they can transport their natural resources using environmentally-friendly ways. They can transport their natural resources using camels which don't pollute the air. They can transport water and oil through pipes. They can use wind turbines to make electricity and use it to run vehicles.



- **Environmentally-friendly ways are ways that don't harm the environment.**
  الطرق الصديقة للبيئة هي طرق لا تضر البيئة.

Help your child write a paragraph correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fresh - Airplanes - water - old

There are many ways of transporting goods. First, we can transport goods long distances by 1) .... Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. 2) .... are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting 3) .... food.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Khaled. I am in grade 4. I live in Suez. When I look out of the window, I see the ships going along the Suez Canal. I sometimes take pictures of them. I sometimes wave at the captain of the ship. I become very happy when the captain waves back at me. The ships are huge and have hundreds of containers. The ships travel to many countries, such as: China, France, England, ... etc.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Khaled is in grade ....
   a) three b) four c) five d) two
2. Khaled sometimes .... at the ship's captain.
   a) waves b) moves c) watches d) plays
3. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) windows b) pictures c) ships d) waves

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Khaled live? ....
5. Where do the ships travel to? ....

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Transporting goods

(products - water - air - airplanes - pipelines)

Writing Corner

"Transportation"

Transportation is very important in our life. There are many kinds of transportation. We can travel by air long distances. Airplanes are fast and comfortable. Ships travel on water. We can transport goods and products long distances by ships because they can carry large items.

"Being safe online"

The internet is very important. We all use it for many purposes. So, you should be safe online. You must create a strong password. Don't tell your friends your password. Don't share your personal information. You should use the safe search option in your browser. If you can't do it, ask an adult for help.

"A tech job"

There are a lot of tech jobs these days. One of them is a UX Designer. UX is short for User Experience. UX designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the technology that you use. They make sure, it is safe, friendly and useful for all users.

Help your child identify how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.

Review on Unit (6)

Vocabulary كلمات

transportation	وسائل النقل	account	حساب
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	link	رابط
ship	سفينة	ship's captain	قبطان السفينة
pipes	أنابيب	career	حياة مهنية
roads	الطرق	containers	حاويات
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	entrepreneurs	رواد الأعمال
search engine	محرك البحث	relaxing	مريح
passphrase	عبارة المرور	specific	محدد / معين
password	كلمة المرور	podcast	نشرة صوتية
browser	متصفح	symbol	رمز

Future Simple Tense
زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + will + inf.

e.g. People will travel to Mars in 2052.

Negative النفي

Subject + won't + inf.

e.g. They won't move to a new house next year.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Will + subject + inf. ......?

Will you travel to the moon one day?

- Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

عميق ....

بضائع ....

مريح ....

طائرة ....

قطار كهربي ....

الطريق

أنبوب / ماسورة

الجو

لسكة الحديد

الماء

Lesson (2)

التعليم ....

وقود ....

البشر ....

مهنة ....

حكومة ....

إجازة

كوكب المريخ

نسان آلي

ستقبل

كنولوجي

Lesson (3)

متصفح ....

رابط ....

الزراعة ....

مهندس الربوتات ....

مصمم تجربة المستخدم ....

إعلان

صندوق البحث

كنولوجيا

محرك البحث

سفينة فضاء

Lesson (4)

حساب ....

حروف كبيرة ....

معلومات شخصية ....

رمز ....

منتظم / عادي ....

شفرة المرور

عنوان

كلمة مرور

عبارة مرور

ملحوظ / واضح

Lessons (5 & 6)

مريح ....

ضخم ....

سفينة حاويات ....

قناة السويس ....

اليابسة ....

لبيئة

رائد أعمال

جانب

حاوية

قبطان سفينة

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities On Unit (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. VR is short for ....
   a) Virtual Reality b) User Experience
   c) Technology d) Advertisement
2. VR headset covers your .... like glasses.
   a) legs b) hands c) eyes d) body
3. .... will use VR headset in the future.
   a) Parks b) Animals c) Museums d) Zoos
4. .... will teach future doctors and nurses with them .
   a) Farms b) Parks c) Universities d) Homes

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Where - bus - went - fine

Omar : Hello, Sara. How are you?

Sara : Hello, Omar. I'm fine, thank you.

Omar : Have you ever been on a 1) .... ?

Sara : Yes, I have.

Omar : 2) .... did you go?

Sara : I 3) .... to the zoo.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Over the years, people have used different kinds of transportation. In the past, people used to transport their goods on camels or on ships. Modern transport has made it easier. People now use planes, trains and buses to travel and carry goods. The plane is the fastest way to travel. Thanks to the new Suez Canal, ships travel faster and take short time to cross. I think in the future there will be more ways to travel faster and faster.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ....
   a) pollution b) education c) transportation d) population
2. Trains and planes are .... kinds of transport.
   a) old b) modern c) bad d) slow
3. We can carry goods on ....
   a) ships b) shops c) goats d) sheep

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. How did people use to transport their goods?

....

5. What's the fastest way to travel?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. People want to learn about Khayameya. ____
2. Grandpa was so sad. ____

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Khayameya school is .... all summer.
   a) taking b) traveling c) acting d) doing
2. The summer holiday was ....
   a) sorry b) sad c) bad d) wonderful

Activities

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... a taxi to work tomorrow.
   a) take b) will take c) took d) taking
2. The government will .... a new hospital.
   a) build b) builds c) built d) building
3. Robots .... planes in 2060.
   a) fly b) flying c) will fly d) flies
4. My parent .... buy a self-driving car next year.
   a) didn't b) aren't c) don't d) won't
5. .... you go to university?
   a) Have b) Will c) Are d) Has

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. you - passwords - When - do - use - ?

....

2. sit - I - won't - by - window - the - .

....

3. ever - Have - on - traveled - you - a ship - ?

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Creating passwords

Guiding elements:

(**strong - personal - friends - easy - characters**)

....

....

....

FICTION READER: KHAYAMEYA SUMMER

صيف الخيامية



BY MOIRA DUTTON
ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA

The Story

KHAYAMEYA SUMMER

Characters


Grandma


Grandpa


Mom


Rasha


Engy


Lobna


Doha


Zeinab

Picture Dictionary


artisan
حِرَفي


sew
يخيط


lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس


geometric patterns
أنماط هندسية

layer
طبقة


stitch
غرزة

Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

Part (1)



Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday. Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit Grandpa!" Her mother said, "Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him."

كانت زينب تشعر بالملل. وكان ذلك في الأسبوع الثاني من الإجازة الصيفية. قالت زينب " هيا نذهب لزيارة جدّنا"، فقالت لها أمها " نعم، فهو يشعر بالحزن في الوقت الحالي. و أعتقد أنه بإمكانك مساعدته."



Zeinab got off the train. There was her grandfather and grandmother! Her grandparents were very pleased to see her.

نزلت زينب من القطار. و كان بانتظارها الجد و الجدة! و كانا في غاية السعادة لرؤيتها.



After tea, Grandpa said, "My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew[1]. I think I will have to stop making things." Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans[2] in Khayameya Street. Zeinab said, "Oh no! You can't stop! You make such beautiful things!"

بعد تناول الشاي قال الجد " عيناي ليست على ما يرام الآن. و من الصعب علي أن أعمل، فأنا لا أستطيع أن أرى و أنا أخيط، و أعتقد انه يجب علي أن أتوقف عن صنع الأشياء."

كان الجد واحدا من صناع الخيام. و كان من أفضل الحرفيين في شارع الخيامية. قالت زينب " أوه لا. لا يمكن أن تتوقف! فأنت تقوم بصناعة أشياء جميلة!»

1. يخيط 2. حرفيين



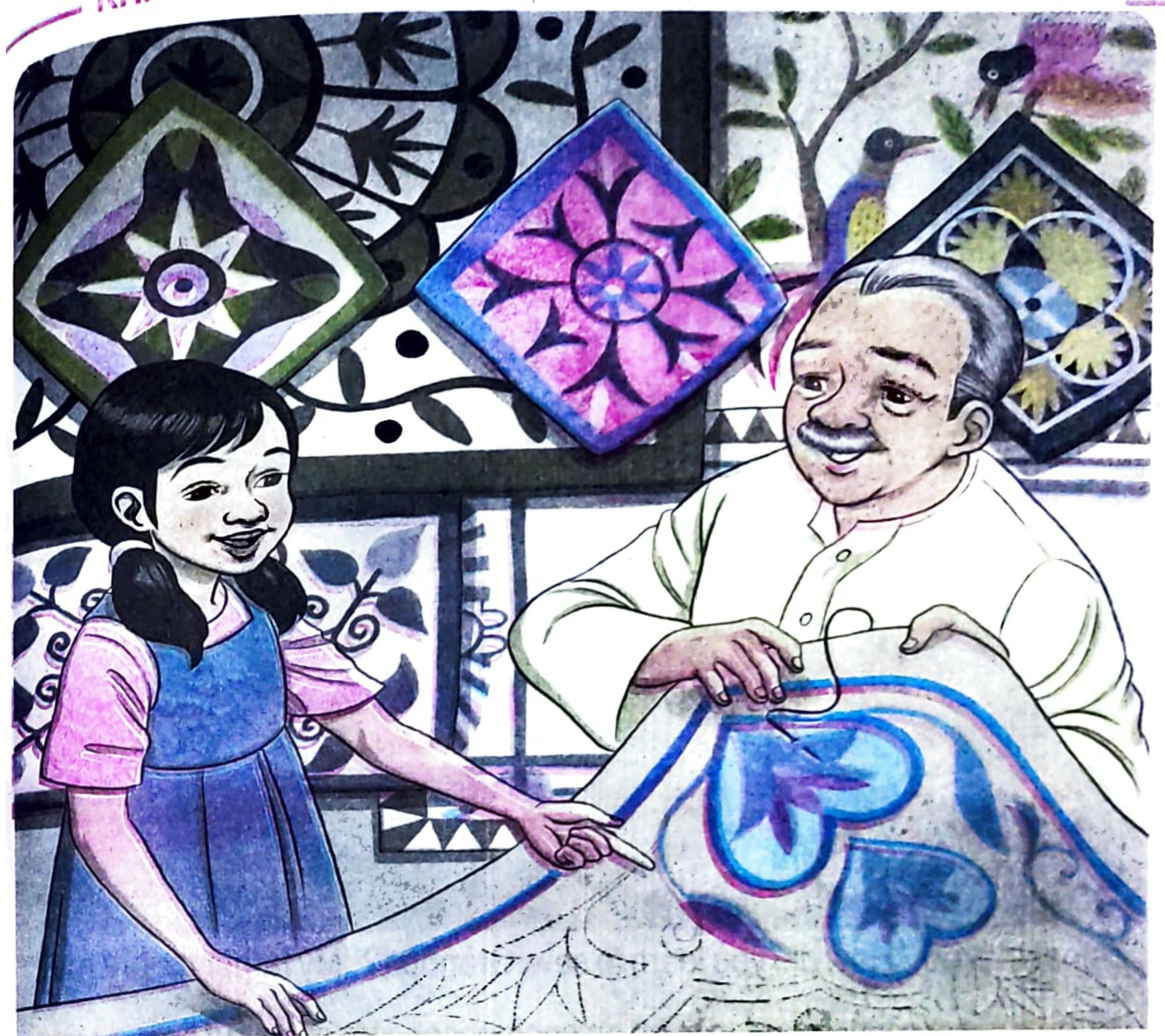
Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop. Zeinab said, "Oh look! I love this big picture with all the flowers! Did you make it, Grandpa?"

"Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches[1]. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand." said Grandpa. "All by hand? That's amazing!"

زارت زينب و جدها المحل. قالت زينب " أوه انظر! انا أحب هذه الصورة الكبيرة ذات الزهور! هل قمت بصناعتها يا جدي؟"
قال الجد " نعم، لقد استغرقت ما يقارب الأربعة أشهر و هي مصنوعة من آلاف وآلاف الغرز الصغيرة و قد قمت بقياس وقص كل أ[illegible] باليد."
قالت ز[illegible] صنعتها كلها باليد؟ هذا مذهل!"

1. غُرز

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



"What's your favorite design Grandpa?" asked Zeinab. "I like sewing lotus flowers [1] and geometric patterns [2] best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me." "I wish I could sew and help you," said Zeinab. Her grandfather smiled. "I can teach you. Do you want to learn?" "Oh, yes please!" said Zeinab.

سألت زينب "ما هو تصميمك المفضل يا جدي؟"

قال الجد "أفضل ما أحب تصميمه هو زهور اللوتس و الزخارف الهندسية، وأحب أيضا خياطة أشكال الطيور.

وقد استخدمت أفضل التطريز في الزخارف ولكن عيوني ليست على ما يرام الآن. و هذا ما يحزنني."

قالت زينب "أتمنى لو أستطيع الخياطة فأساعدك."

ابتسم الجد وقال "أستطيع أن أعلمك، هل تريدين أن تتعلمي؟"

قالت زينب "أوه. نعم من فضلك."

1. زهور اللوتس 2. (زخارف / أنماط) هندسية

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



Zeinab asked, "How did you learn to sew, Grandpa?' 'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that! I became a Khayameya artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa. Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math! And now you are my teacher, too".

سألت زينب "كيف تعلمت الخياطة يا جدي؟"

أجاب الجد قائلًا "علمني أبي. عندما كنت طفلًا، أردت أن أكون مهندسًا أو معلمًا، لكن غيرت رأيي. و علمني أبي الخياطة. وقد عَلَّم جدي أبي قبل ذلك! و أصبحت حِرَفِي خيام و أحب عملي."

قالت زينب "أنت تصمم النماذج وتقوم بقياسها، و تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس و فنان وجيد في الرياضيات! وأنت معلمي الآن أيضًا."

غيرتُ رأيي

Help your child read the story and have fun.
ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was excited.
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa
3. Zeinab's grandparents were sad to see her.
4. Grandpa's eyes aren't very good now.
5. Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab was ....
   a) bored b) excited c) happy d) interested
2. Grandpa was a .... maker.
   a) shoe b) tent c) play d) star
3. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....
   a) bus b) car c) train d) ship
4. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a) sad b) bad c) mad d) pleased
5. Grandpa's eyes are not very .... now.
   a) bad b) worse c) good d) happy
6. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya street.
   a) artisans b) doctors c) actors d) farmers
7. Grandpa likes sewing .... and geometric patterns best.
   a) sunflowers b) lotus flowers c) rose d) corn
8. Zeinab wishes she could .... and help her grandpa.
   a) write b) play c) do d) sew

Part (2)

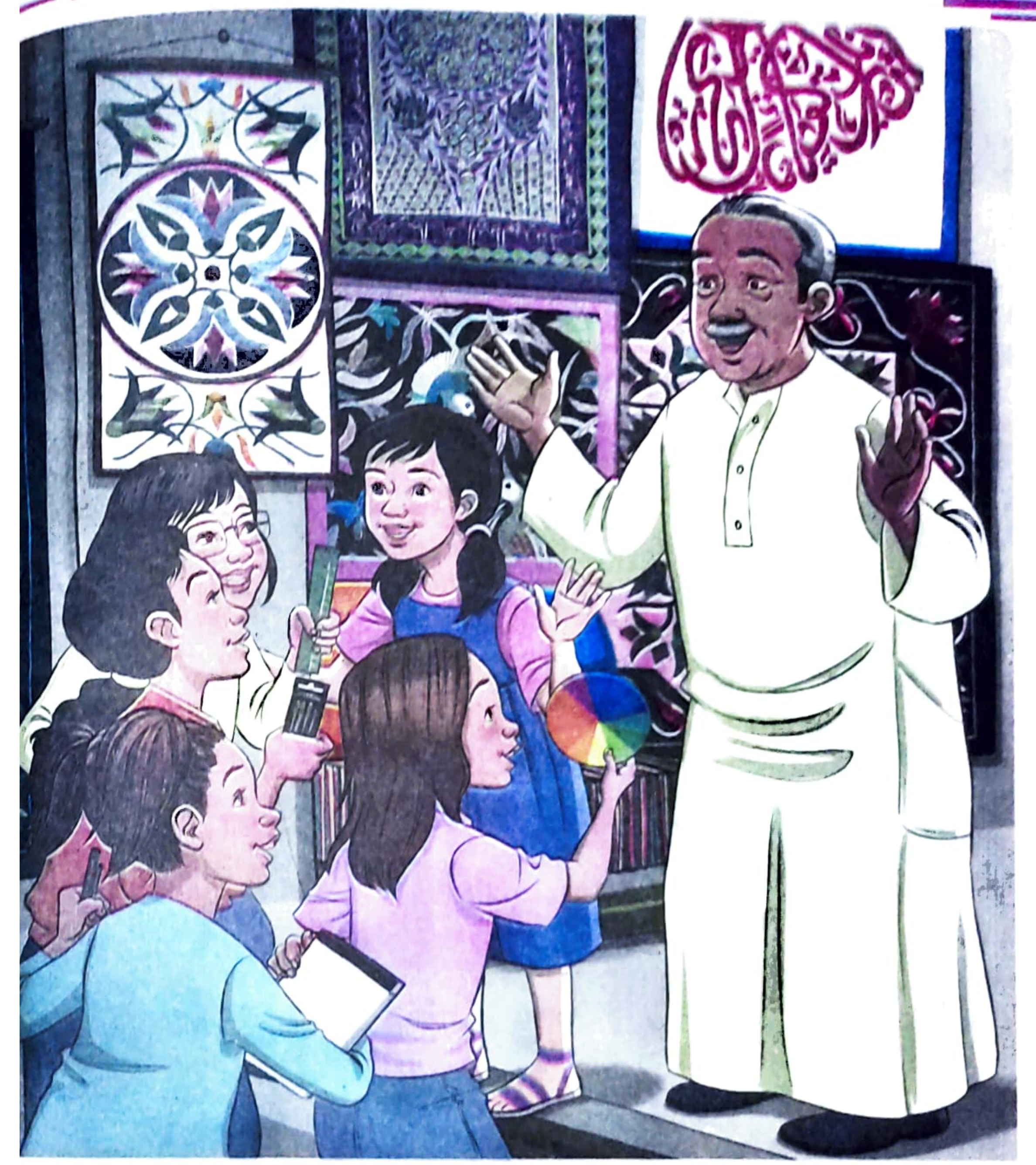


Zeinab said, "Grandpa, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too. Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things. Let's call them!"

قالت زينب " لدي فكرة يا جدي. إن صديقاتي ماهرات جدًا. و أعتقد أنهن يردن أن يتعلمن عن الخيامية أيضًا: رشا جيدة في الرياضيات و حل المسائل. و لبنى تخترع الأشياء طوال الوقت و لديها أفكار جيدة. و تقوم ضحى برسومات مذهلة. ويمكن أن تساعدك إنجي في توضيح كيفية الخياطة لنا جميعًا، فهي تقوم بأشياء جميلة. هيا نتصل بهم!"

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



Zeinab's friends arrived. 'We're here! Let's learn something new.'

Grandfather said, 'Welcome girls. Thank you for coming! We make the patterns with three layers[1] of cotton and put them together like this ....'

وصل صديقات زينب وقُلن "ها قد وصلنا! هيا بنا نتعلم شيئًا جديدًا."

قال الجد "مرحبًا يا فتيات. شكرًا على المجيء! نحن نقوم بعمل الزخارف بثلاث طبقات من القطن ونقوم بوضعها سويًا هكذا ..."

1. طبقات



Grandfather said, “Zeinab, you have such clever friends! What a good idea!” Rasha answered, ‘We like learning new things, and we have a great teacher!’

قال الجد " يا زينب، لكِ صديقات ماهرات! يا لها من فكرة رائعة!"

ردت رشا " نحن نحب أن نتعلم أشياء جديدة و لدينا معلم رائع!"



Other people came to watch. They said, 'That looks fun. Can we try?'

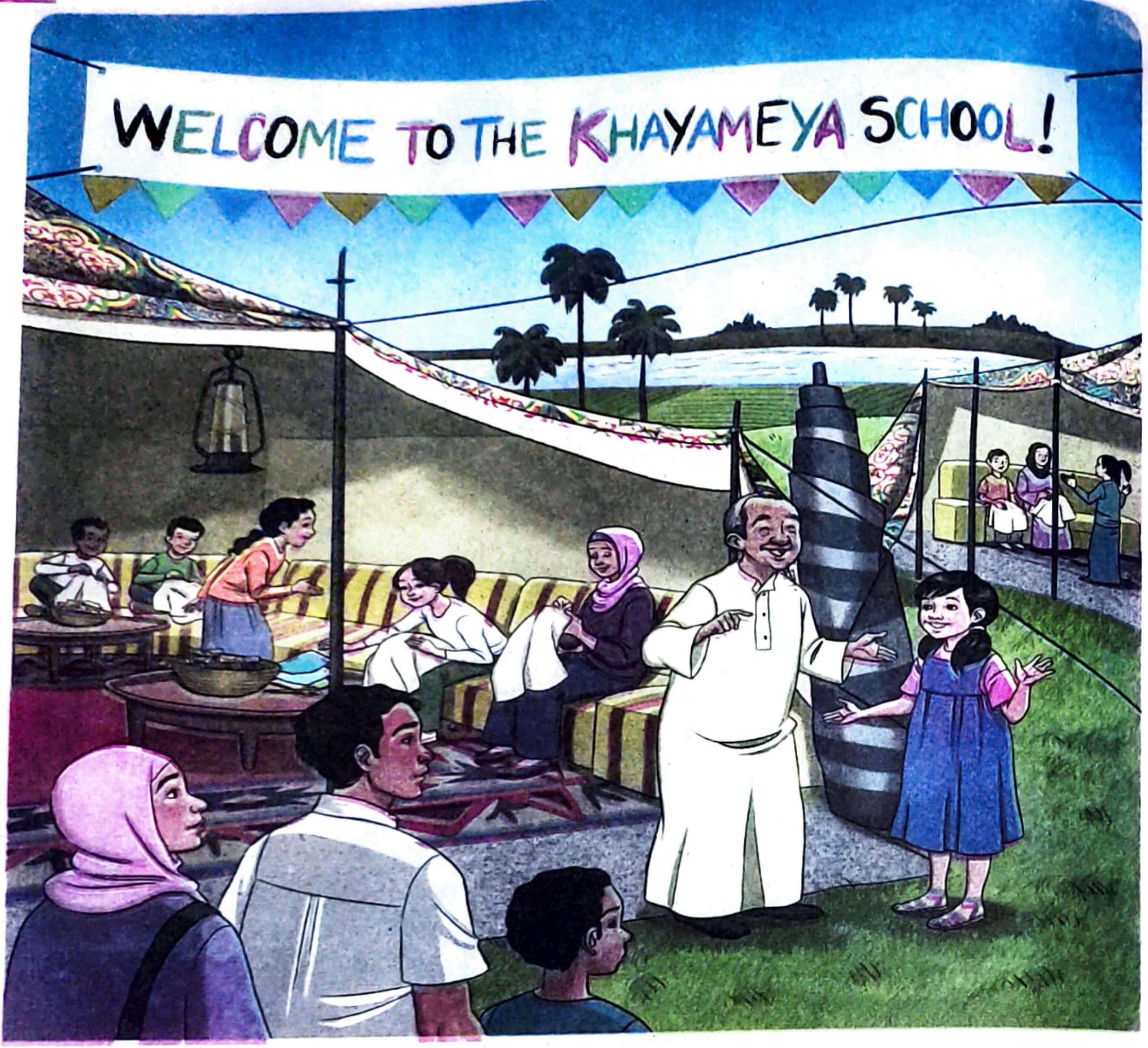
Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome! Come and join us!"

أتى أناس آخرون لمشاهدة، و قالوا " هذا يبدو ممتعا. هل يمكن أن نجرب؟" قال الجد " مرحبًا! تعالوا و انضموا إلينا!"



Grandpa said, "Zeinab, look at all these people! They all want to learn about Khayameya! I'm so happy!'

قال الجد "يا زينب، انظري إلى كل هؤلاء الناس! كلهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية! أنا سعيد جدًا!"



Zeinab said, "Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them. Khayameya School is traveling all summer! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh! What a wonderful summer holiday! Thank you, Grandpa!'

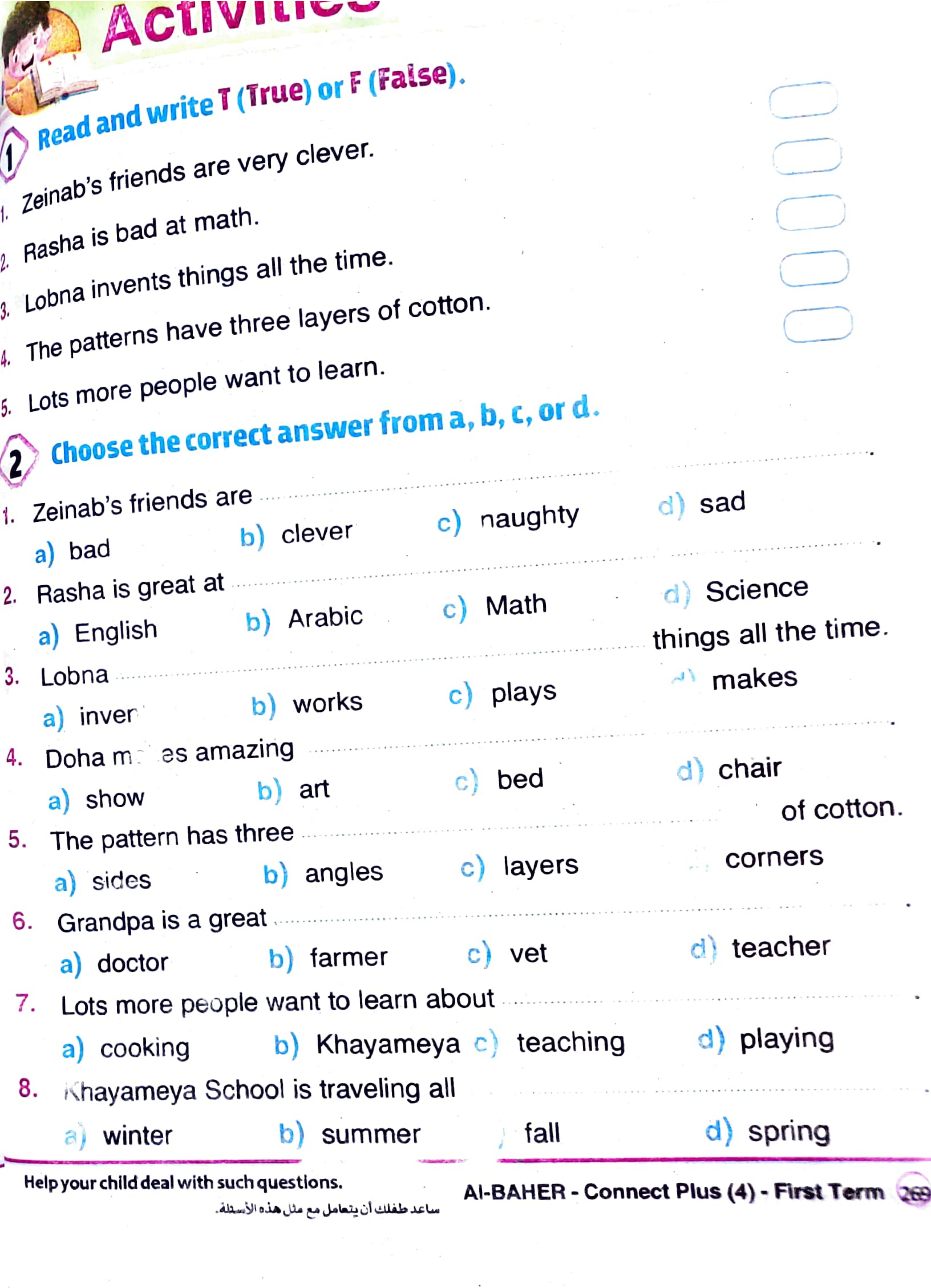
Grandpa laughed, 'No, thank you Zeinab!'

قالت زينب "يرغب الكثير من الناس في التعلم أيضًا. فالناس من أماكن عديدة من أنحاء مصر يريدون أن تعلمهم. تتنقل مدرسة الخيامية طوال الصيف! ثم سنذهب إلى الإسماعيلية ثم إلى طنطا و مرسى مطروح! يا لها من إجازة صيفية رائعة! أشكرك يا جدي!"

ضحك الجد قائلًا " لا، بل شكرًا لكِ أنتِ يا زينب!"

Help your child read the story and have fun.

ساعد طفلك في قراءة القصة والاستمتاع بها.



Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab's friends are very clever. ☐
2. Rasha is bad at math. ☐
3. Lobna invents things all the time. ☐
4. The patterns have three layers of cotton. ☐
5. Lots more people want to learn. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab's friends are ....
   a) bad b) clever c) naughty d) sad
2. Rasha is great at ....
   a) English b) Arabic c) Math d) Science
3. Lobna .... things all the time.
   a) inver[illegible] b) works c) plays d) makes
4. Doha m[illegible]es amazing ....
   a) show b) art c) bed d) chair
5. The pattern has three .... of cotton.
   a) sides b) angles c) layers d) corners
6. Grandpa is a great ....
   a) doctor b) farmer c) vet d) teacher
7. Lots more people want to learn about ....
   a) cooking b) Khayameya c) teaching d) playing
8. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a) winter b) summer c) fall d) spring

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are two halves, or two hemispheres, in our brain. The left hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver.and bronze medals in many different countries.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can mix red and yellow to make orange. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat preys that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a

warning that the animal is poisonous.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The girls at my running club are my community. We are all from different parts of town. We have lots of friends and families who live in our neighborhood. I think good citizenship is about looking after where you live and being kind to people.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Not everyone in Ancient Egypt learned to read and write. This was a job for scribes. To become a scribe, children went to a special school. The children had to learn lots of different signs and symbols.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Ibrahim, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashaqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's sparsely populated – only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an isolated place, too.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. You can see cats in the street.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My grandma and I like natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how the artisans dye the

wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There is a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The water you drink is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Fossil fuels are a non-renewable resource. Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Crude oil is taken out of the ground and made into petroleum, which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Coal is used to generate electricity.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to complete your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting upset about problems, be a problem solver.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river.

Activities on Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

VR is short for Virtual Reality. You have to wear a special VR headset. It covers your eyes like glasses. There are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

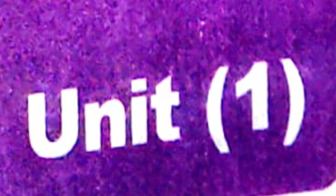
AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision







What can I do?

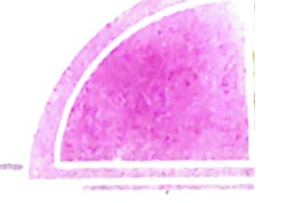
Vocabulary كلمات

senses	الحواس	stomach	المعدة
tongue (taste)	اللسان (التذوق)	energy	طاقة
nose (smell)	الأنف (الشم)	muscles	العضلات
ears (hearing)	الأذنان (السمع)	brain	المخ
eyes (sight)	العينان (البصر)	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
skin (touch)	الجلد (اللمس)	lungs	الرئتان
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	bone	عظمة
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	liquid	سائل
pump blood	يضخ الدم	organ	عضو (في الجسم)
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	oxygen	أكسجين
code	شفرة	sign language	لغة الإشارة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

communicate in	يتواصل بلغة	change ... into	يحول .... إلى
breathe in ... through	يتنفس ... من خلال	do something	يفعل شيئًا ما
be made up of	يتكون من	find out	يعرف / يكتشف
think about	يفكر في	practice football	يمارس كرة القدم
What kind of .... ?	ما نوع .... ؟	different from	مختلف عن
make choices	يختار	attached to	متصل بـ
look disappointed	يبدو محبطًا	take place	يحدث

Help your child revise Unit (1).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.





Present Simple Tense

Usage

We use the present simple to talk about:

- Something that is true. شيء حقيقي.
  e.g. Cows give us milk.
- Something that happens regularly (habit). شيء يحدث بانتظام (عادة).
  e.g. I play football every day.

Form

(I/ We/ You/ They/ Plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He/ She/ It/ Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies) ...

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Keywords

always	دائمًا	usually	عادة
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا	every (day, week, ...)	كل (يوم ، أسبوع ، ..)
on (Mondays, Fridays, ...)			في أيام (الإثنين ، الجمعة ، ....)

e.g. Adam goes to the park every week.

e.g. Kareem always does drawing.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our digestive system when we .... and drink.
   a) breathe b) think c) eat d) walk
2. We chew food, then it goes to our ....
   a) lungs b) heart c) stomach d) teeth
3. The food .... into energy and nutrients.
   a) changes b) moves c) uses d) mixes
4. We need energy and nutrients in our ....
   a) hair b) clothes c) bodies d) home

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Paralympic .... is an international competition.
   a) Puzzles b) Games c) Music d) Plays
2. The Olympics takes place every .... years.
   a) four b) five c) three d) two
3. .... is an important area in sports.
   a) Football b) Tennis c) Parasports d) Basketball
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.
   a) athletes b) vets c) teachers d) captains

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

eyes - senses - hear - five

Toka : How many senses do we have?
Nour : We have 1) .... senses.
Toka : How can we 2) ....?
Nour : We hear with our ears.
Toka : How can we see?
Nour : We can see with our 3) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sign - different - hands - deaf

People who are deaf or can't hear well can learn 1) .... language. This is a language in which we use our 2) ...., faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is 3) .... in each country.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The .... are people who can't hear.
   a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
2. .... are attached to our bones.
   a) Muscles b) Lungs c) Skeletons d) Hair
3. Blood is pumped around our body by the ....
   a) bones b) muscles c) stomach d) heart
4. A .... is made up of all the bones in the body.
   a) heart b) muscle c) lung d) skeleton
5. People who are .... can't see.
   a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
6. He came first, so he won the .... medal.
   a) gold b) bronze c) silver d) diamond
7. We use the .... system when we eat .
   a) respiratory b) digestive c) muscle d) skeleton
8. We use the .... system when we breathe.
   a) respiratory b) sense c) blood d) digestive
9. Deaf people use .... language to communicate.
   a) sing b) song c) play d) sign
10. When do the Paralympic Games take .... ?
    a) palace b) place c) plus d) police
11. .... protect our organs.
    a) Bones b) Stomach c) Skeleton d) Lungs

12. Many athletes take .... in competitions.
a) park b) part c) put d) port

13. We taste with our ....
a) ears b) tongue c) hair d) nose

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. The brain .... the most important organ of the body.
a) are b) have c) were d) is

2. An adult brain .... about 1,400 grams.
a) weigh b) weighs c) win d) weighed

3. The average brain .... 12,000 to 60,000 thoughts a day.
a) does b) has c) have d) had

4. Kareema .... disappointed.
a) looking b) looks c) look d) to look

5. Adam goes to the park .... week.
a) every b) never c) always d) usually

6. Sara always .... drawing.
a) do b) did c) doing d) does

7. Tarek .... two sisters.
a) is b) has c) have d) had

8. Noura .... volleyball on Mondays.
a) is played b) play c) plays d) playing

9. We .... to the beach in the summer.
a) go b) is going c) goes d) going

10. .... is hungry.
a) We b) He c) I d) They

11. We .... cookery class.
a) done b) do c) does d) doing

12. I .... one brother.
a) has b) have c) had d) is

13. He .... to music every day.

a) listen b) listens c) listening d) is listened

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts, and meat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about how to stay ....

a) healthy b) unhealthy c) fresh d) good

2. Our brain is about .... water.

a) 75% b) 57% c) 55% d) 77%

3. Fruit and vegetables have a lot of ....

a) oil b) petrol c) fiber d) fats

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does a good diet include?

....

5. Why do we need vitamins and minerals?

....



5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. wants - tidy - Mom - the - lounge - to - .

   ....

2. play - We - after - tennis - school - .

   ....

3. are - They - tired - bored - and - .

   ....

4. today, - are - What - doing - Mom - we - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(every day - eyes - nose - hear - tongue - touch)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Our respiratory system

Guiding elements:

(breathe - lungs - oxygen - heart - pass)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Plants and animals



كلمات

Vertebrates	الفقاريات	Invertebrates	اللافقاريات
backbone	العمود الفقرى	crab	سرطان البحر
amphibians	البرمائيات	grasshopper	الجرادة
mammals	الثدييات	dragonfly	اليعسوب
humans	البشر	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
species	أنواع/فصائل	octopus	الأخطبوط
bird	طائر	snail	الحلزون
bat	خفاش	squid	الحبَّار
beak	منقار	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
fin	زعنفة	shell	صَدَفة
fur	فرو	spider	عنكبوت
gill	خيشوم	insects	الحشرات
scales	قشور/حراشف	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
whales	الحيتان	reptiles	الزواحف
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feed with	يغذي - يطعم بـ	such as	مثل
give birth to	تلد	take in	يمتص
live on	يتغذى على / يعيش على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
find out	يكتشف	on land	على اليابسة
write about	يكتب عن	in water	في الماء

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives
صفات المقارنة

Usage الاستخدام

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + er + than.

 faster than →   smaller than → 

e.g. The cheetah is faster than the ostrich.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.



1 Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) إلى الصفة.

 nicer than → 

e.g. The fish is nicer than the ostrich.

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.



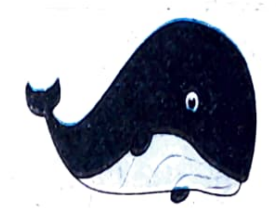
bigger than



e.g. The elephant is bigger than the ostrich.

3. Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er.



heavier than





e.g. The blue whale is heavier than the elephant.

Superlative Adjectives

صفات التفضيل

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.**

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة.

Form التكوين

the + adj صفة + est.

small  the smallest

e.g. The ant is the smallest.





Spelling rules

1. **Adjectives that end in (-e), only add (-st).**

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (-st) فقط.

nice → the nicest

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the nicest.

2. **Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.**

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big → the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3. **Adjectives that end in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).**

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy → the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest sea animal.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb. It comes after the verb.

الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. Snails move slowly.

Form التكوين

adj صفة **+ ly**

لتكوين الظرف، نضيف (ly) إلى الصفة.

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء | sad حزين → sadly بحزن

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.
   a) Vets b) Doctors c) Engineers d) Scientists
2. People think that chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a) smallest b) highest c) biggest d) tallest
3. The .... is 30 millimeters long.
   a) snake b) elephant c) lion d) chameleon
4. That chameleon is bigger than a .... in Guinea.
   a) cat b) bird c) snail d) frog

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists think that there are 400,000 different types of ....
   a) jobs b) plants c) places d) animals
2. Plants have ...., which come in many different colors.
   a) animals b) flowers c) trees d) birds
3. The bright flowers .... insects.
   a) kill b) warn c) describe d) attract
4. .... carry pollen from one flower to another flower.
   a) Plants b) Insects c) Colors d) Trees

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mammals - zoo - animals - elephants

Hassan : Where did you go yesterday?
Omar : I went to the 1) ....
Hassan : What did you see there?
Omar : I saw some animals.
Hassan : Which animal did you like best?
Omar : I liked the 2) .... and the monkeys.
Hassan : Are the monkeys 3) ....?
Omar : Yes, they are. They give birth.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Arachnids - backbone - cold-blooded - soft

Invertebrates don't have a backbone They are 1) .... They live in the sea and some live on land. Some have 2) .... bodies and some have hard shells. 3) .... are not insects. They have 8 legs.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Humans, ... and whales are all mammals.
   a) dragonflies b) birds c) ducks d) lions
2. Birds eat meat, fruit, insects, nuts and ....
   a) chickens b) seeds c) gills d) water
3. Birds have .... which are hard and made of bones.
   a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
4. Reptiles have .... They don't have fur or hair.
   a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
5. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a) beaks b) seeds c) gills d) scales
6. Amphibians have smooth skin and live in .... habitats.
   a) moist b) hot c) dry d) noisy
7. Reptiles and amphibians are .... blooded.
   a) warm b) cold c) hot d) cool
8. Amphibians always lay their eggs in ....
   a) land b) water c) sand d) soil
9. Fish have scales and use their .... to move.
   a) beaks b) gills c) fins d) scales
10. Mammals are .... -blooded and they feed their babies milk.
    a) boil b) cold c) warm d) hot
11. The biggest land animal is the .... elephant.
    a) Asian b) African c) American d) European

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

12. The elephant is a ....
a) mammal b) reptile c) bird d) arachnid

13. The mammals are ....
a) invertebrates b) vertebrates c) insects d) birds

14. The .... hummingbird is the smallest bird.
a) insect b) duck c) ant d) bee

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)**

1. The Asian elephant is .... than the African elephant.
a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

2. The whale shark is the .... fish in the world.
a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

3. The blue whale is .... than the lion.
a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest

4. The .... bird is the bee hummingbird.
a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

5. The ostrich is the .... bird.
a) big b) biggest c) the biggest d) bigger

6. Ali is .... than his brother.
a) tall b) taller c) the tallest d) tallest

7. There is a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. It's the .... reptile.
a) small b) smaller c) the smallest d) smallest

8. Khaled can run .... He is a fast runner.
a) quick b) quickly c) quickest d) slow

9. I can write English paragraphs ....
a) good b) well c) bad d) sad

10. Elephants are .... land animals in the world.
a) the biggest b) big c) bigger than d) bigger

11. Snails move very ....
a) slow b) slowly c) the slowest d) slowest

12. Jellyfish swim ....
   a) the quickest   b) quickest   c) quickly   d) quick

13. Ants are .... than humans.
   a) stronger   b) strongest   c) the strongest   d) strong

14. Insects can find food ....
   a) the easiest   b) easiest   c) easy   d) easily

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors. We can mix red and yellow to make orange. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are .... different types of plants.
   a) 400   b) 4,000   c) 40,000   d) 400,000

2. Insects carry .... from one flower to another.
   a) seeds   b) food   c) pollen   d) water

3. The underlined word "these" refers to types of ....
   a) plants   b) scientists   c) seeds   d) insects

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the types of colors?

....

5. How can we make orange?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. than - larger - Leopards - cheetahs - are - .

   ....

2. horses - Ostriches - than - faster - are - .

   ....

3. are - Sloths - than - giant tortoises - slower - .

   ....

4. are - the heaviest - Green anacondas - snakes - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Keeping animals at the zoo

Guiding elements:

(advantages - disadvantages - protect - wrong habitats - free)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Fish

Guiding elements:

(water - gills - cold-blooded - scales - fins)

....

....

....

....

Unit (3) My world



Vocabulary كلمات

community	مجتمع	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
neighborhood	الحي السكنى	shabbaba	الشبابة
citizenship	مواطنة	simsimeya	السمسمية
village	قرية	ney	الناي
capital city	العاصمة	oboe	أوبو (مزمار)
society	المجتمع	qanun	القانون
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	oud	العود
pharaoh	فرعون	rebaba	الربابة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا
scribe	كاتب	Tahtib	التحطيب
unite	يُوحّد	clapping	التصفيق
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر - الوجه القبلي	Bedouin	بدوى
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	fair way	طريقة عادلة
governorates	محافظات	work hard	يعمل بجد
string instrument	آلة وترية	tourists	سائحون

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write down	يدون / يسجل	work for	يعمل لدى
write in hieroglyphs	يكتب باللغة الهيروغليفية	mix with	يمزج بـ
all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر	lots of	كثير من
home of	موطن لـ	sail on	يُبحر في

Help your child revise Unit (3).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Possessive (adjectives - pronouns)

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	أنا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
He	هو	his		his	ملكه
She	هي	her		hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير العاقل	its		----	
We	نحن	our		ours	ملكنا
You	أنت - أنتم	your		yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their		theirs	ملكهم

e.g. - This is my pen. = This pen is mine.

- These are your keys. = These keys are yours.

1 تستخدم صفات و ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص لشيء ما.

e.g. This ball is mine. هذه الكرة ملكي.

e.g. This ruler is hers. هذه المسطرة ملكها.

2 ضمائر الملكية غالبًا تأتي في نهاية الجملة

e.g. That juice is mine! It isn't yours. ذلك العصير ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.

3
- صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم الشيء المملوك.
- ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.

e.g. This is my car. It's mine. هذه سيارتي. إنها ملكي.

e.g. That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

The Past Simple Tense

Form: التكوين:

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

like → liked | join → joined | study → studied

Spelling rules

1. Verbs end in (e), add only (d).

rule → ruled | move → moved | use → used

2. Verbs end in (y) preceded by a consonant, omit (y) then add (ied).

try → tried | study → studied | cry → cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

ليس لها شكل محدد وتحفظ

write → wrote | is → was | make → made

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use past simple tense to express actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. They wrote in hieroglyphs.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس	last (week, month ,...) (الأسبوع / الشهر) الماضي
فترة زمنية + ago منذ	in + تاريخ ماضي (in 2010)

e.g. I studied English yesterday.

e.g. We met Ali 2 hours ago.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is a group of people who live together in the same area.
   a) neighborhood b) citizenship c) community d) city
2. My community includes my family, my .... , and my school.
   a) brothers b) cousins c) sisters d) friends
3. A good .... is acting in a way that helps your society.
   a) village b) body c) citizenship d) community
4. I am always .... and helpful at school.
   a) happy b) angry c) polite d) good

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, , c, or d.

1. Music was important in .... Egypt.
   a) Lower b) Upper c) Ancient d) Modern
2. .... made pictures of musicians playing instruments.
   a) Artists b) Engineers c) Teachers d) Scribes
3. .... were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.
   a) Vets b) Musicians c) Players d) Doctors
4. Ancient Egyptians put instruments into ....
   a) schools b) homes c) pyramids d) museums

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

string - instruments - drumming - Saidi

Tamer : What kind of music do you like?
Adam : I like 1) .... music.
Tamer : What 2) .... does this type use?
Adam : It uses string instruments such as violins.
Tamer : Is 3) .... a key part?
Adam : Yes, it is.

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

oasis - population - Governorate - capital

New Valley Governorate is 440,098km² in size It's very large. The 1) .... there is about 245,000. The 2) .... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an 3) .... in the south of this region.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Alexandria and Cairo are ....
   a) governorates b) countries c) villages d) towns
2. New Valley is the .... governorate.
   a) smallest b) oldest c) newest d) biggest
3. Upper Egypt is in the .... of Egypt.
   a) west b) south c) north d) east
4. The Pharaoh Mena .... the north and south to form Egypt.
   a) decided b) divided c) united d) separated
5. " .... " means behaving in a way that helps your society.
   a) Citizenship b) Community c) Friendship d) Sport
6. .... wrote down everything that happened in Ancient Egypt.
   a) Scientists b) Athletes c) Vets d) Scribes
7. Egypt has many types of traditional .... music.
   a) folk b) modern c) new d) old
8. There are .... governorates in Egypt now.
   a) 20 b) 27 c) 35 d) 37
9. The girls at my music club are my ....
   a) neigborhood b) citizenship c) friendship d) community
10. Scribes wrote on paper made from .... reeds.
    a) papyrus b) plastic c) paper d) metal
11. The Aswan .... was built in 1970.
    a) High Dam b) Bridge c) Temple d) Pyramid

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

12. There are .... main parts to the history of ancient Egypt.
   a) three b) four c) five d) six
13. Saidi music uses violins and ....
   a) cellos b) guitars c) oboes d) pianos
14. Scribes wrote in .... in ancient Egypt.
   a) hieroglyphs b) English c) Arabic d) French

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. They're Aya's running shoes. They're ....
   a) he b) she c) hers d) theirs
2. It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's ....
   a) b) theirs c) they d) ours
3. It's .... bike. It's yours.
   a) my b) her c) your d) mine
4. Is that your dad's car? - Yes, it's ....
   a) my b) mine c) his d) your
5. It's .... community. It's mine.
   a) my b) mine c) her d) our
6. They're Adam's neighbors. They're ....
   a) his b) he c) him d) her
7. That's your bike. It's ....
   a) his b) theirs c) yours d) mine
8. Scribes .... very important people in Ancient Egypt.
   a) was b) is c) are d) were
9. Where .... you go yesterday?
   a) do b) are c) did d) does
10. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago.
   a) start b) starts c) started d) will start
11. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs.
   a) wrote b) writes c) write d) writing

12. I .... English yesterday.

a) study b) studied c) studies d) will study

13. It's my house. It's ....

a) hers b) ours c) mine d) my

14. It .... very hot yesterday.

a) is b) was c) were d) am

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt has a long history of traditional ....

a) carpets b) sports c) crafts d) cars

2. Khayameya patterns are designed using different ....

a) carpets b) colors c) circles d) pens

3. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to .... huge tents.

a) design b) decorate c) buy d) make

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who made Khayameya?

....

5. Where can you buy Khayameya?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. people - in - How many - Cairo - live - ?

....

2. biggest - New Valley - the - is - Governorate - .

....

3. favorite - My - the oud - instrument - is - .

....

4. music - singing - Bedouin - drumming - includes - and - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Your governorate

Guiding elements:

(Giza - famous - pyramids - zoo - River Nile)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

(history - Upper Egypt - Lower Egypt - Mena - Nile)

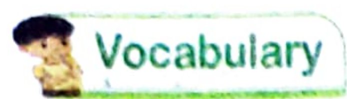
....

....

....

....

Unit (4) City and country



Vocabulary كلمات

city	مدينة كبيرة	loom	نول
congestion	ازدحام مروري	wool	صوف
densely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية عالية	artisan	حرفي
sparsely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية قليلة	carpet	سجادة
inhabitants	سكان	spin	يغزل / ينسج
isolated	منعزل	yarn	خيط (غزل)
metropolitan	عاصمي	weave	ينسج
pedestrians	المشاة	buffaloes	جاموس
traditional	تقليدي	geese	أوز
services	خدمات	sheep	خراف
rural	ريفي	village	قرية
urban	مدني	environment	البيئة
warp	السداة (مد خيوط النسيج)	division	القسمة
dye	يصبغ	fraction	كسر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	tell about	يخبر عن
live in	يعيش في	more than	أكثر من
a lot of	كثير من	pick out	يختار
be going to + inf.	سوف	in the desert	في الصحراء
in an isolated place	في مكان منعزل	close to	قريب من
learn about	يتعلم عن	have to	يجب أن / يضطر إلى

Help your child revise Unit (4). ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Plural Forms

صيغ الجمع

A noun can be singular or plural.
To change a noun from singular into plural, we follow some rules.

1. Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers   sister → sisters

2. Nouns ending in: (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es)

buffalo → buffaloes   box → boxes
dish → dishes   watch → watches

3. Nouns ending in: (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies   city → cities

4. Nouns ending in: a vowel + y, we add (s).

donkey → donkeys   boy → boys

5. Irregular plural: The noun changes (There is no rule)

man → men   woman → women
goose → geese   child → children

6. Some nouns don't change.

a sheep → sheep   a deer → deer
a fish → fish

Note:

يُسبق الاسم المفرد بـ a أو an

Subordinating Conjunctions

روابط التتابع

After بعد

لربط فكرتين متتاليتين

e.g. After I went to the park, I met my cousin.

Before قبل

e.g. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it.

as soon as بمجرد أن

e.g. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

so that لكي

لبيان الغرض أو السبب

e.g. My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshops so that I could learn about this craft.

although = even though بالرغم من ذلك

لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

While بينما - أثناء

لربط حدثين في نفس الوقت

e.g. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave.

Every time كل مرة

e.g. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina lives in ....
   a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Luxor
2. Alexandria is a beautiful .... on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a) town b) oasis c) city d) village
3. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a) third b) fourth c) second d) first
4. Alexandria has an important ....
   a) lake b) river c) port d) ship

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, , c, or i.

1. Dina is .... years old.
   a) 10 b) 11 c) 12 d) 13
2. Dina has a big ....
   a) park b) school c) family d) group
3. There are a lot of .... in Alexandria.
   a) schools b) services c) banks d) streets
4. Dina and her family visit Montaza Palace once a ....
   a) year b) month c) week d) day

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

artisans - workshop - much - enjoy

Noura : Where did you go yesterday?
Amira : I went to a spinning and weaving 1) ....
Noura : Who explained how the 2) .... make the carpets?
Amira : The guide at the workshop.
Noura : Did you 3) .... your visit?
Amira : Yes, I enjoyed it very much.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dye - guide - die - Artisans

Last week, we went to a carpet workshop. The 1) .... explained everything to us. 2) .... use yarn to make carpets. First, they have to wash the yarn and dry it. Then, they 3) .... it with natural colors.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. About 700 people live in a ....
   a) country b) city c) village d) town
2. Wool comes from ....
   a) cows b) horses c) goats d) sheep
3. Aswan is on the .... Nile.
   a) River b) Lake c) Sea d) Ocean
4. Greater Cairo has more than 20 million ....
   a) inhabitants b) animals c) cars d) birds
5. .... spin wool to make it into yarn.
   a) Vets b) Artisans c) Doctors d) Teachers
6. The .... at the carpet workshop explained everything.
   a) farmer b) vet c) engineer d) guide
7. The artisans make ....
   a) carpets b) medicines c) trains d) cars
8. I live in Greater Cairo. It is a .... area.
   a) metropolitan b) village c) rural d) city
9. Alexandria is a .... populated city.
   a) few b) densely c) sparsely d) little
10. An oasis is in the desert so it is a/an .... place.
    a) urban b) isolated c) densely d) rural
11. A warp is used to make ....
    a) paper b) wool c) carpets d) cotton

12. Farmers keep animals like ....

a) buffaloes b) ducks c) geese d) ants

13. .... have to be careful while crossing the road.

a) Pedestrians b) Drivers c) Pilots d) Doctors

14. Weavers use .... in weaving.

a) bikes b) looms c) balls d) clocks

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. Tamer couldn't eat .... he was hungry.

a) although b) after c) before d) while

2. I watched my children .... they played in the park.

a) while b) so that c) even though d) although

3. I finished my homework .... I was tired and had a headache.

a) so that b) while c) even though d) before

4. Laila is studying English .... she can be a journalist.

a) every time b) though c) so that d) while

5. .... we go to Alexandria, I remember our holiday there.

a) While b) Before c) Every time d) Though

6. Dina ran upstairs to see her sister .... she got home.

a) after b) though c) while d) before

7. They ran inside .... it started raining.

a) so that b) though c) as soon as d) while

8. We chatted with our friends .... we waited for the bus.

a) though b) so that c) while d) although

9. .... my sister hears this song, she dances.

a) Although b) Every time c) So that d) While

10. Dad bought a laptop .... he could work at home.

a) so that b) while c) after d) before

11. The audience didn't wait long .... the concert started.

a) so that b) before c) even though d) although

12. We had to chop vegetables .... we cooked them.
   a) after   b) before   c) while   d) so that
13. .... he was clever, he couldn't win the mach.
   a) Although   b) Before   c) After   d) As soon as
14. .... I go to the market, I buy some fruits.
   a) But   b) Every time   c) So   d) Though

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week my father took me to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide there explained everything to us. He showed us the warp which is the structure of the carpet. Artisans there are very clever. They make beautiful carpets. First, they wash the yarn. Then, they dry it. After that, they dye the yarn using natural colors. I learnt many things there and I enjoyed my time too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My .... took me to a spinning and weaving workshop.
   a) father   b) mother   c) brother   d) sister
2. The warp is the structure of the ....
   a) carpet   b) curtain   c) cloth   d) sheet
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) week   b) warp   c) carpet   d) yarn

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did you go to the workshop?

....

5. Who explained everything to you?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make - carpets - Artisans - beautiful - .

....

2. before - We - chop - vegetables - them - cook - we - .

....

3. sleep - Habeba - although - tired - couldn't - was - she - .

....

4. animals - farm - We - have - our - on - a lot of - .

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Carpet making

Guiding elements:

(traditional - wool - artisans - yarn - vegetable dyes - loom)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Your city

Guiding elements:

(Sharm El-Sheikh - beautiful - services - malls - sparsely)

....

....

....

....

Unit (5) Resources in our world



Vocabulary كلمات

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	petroleum	بترول
renewable	متجدد	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
non-renewable	غير متجدد	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
coal	الفحم	run out	ينفد
metal	معدن	turbine engineer	مهندس توربينات
mineral	معدن	solution	حل
plastic	البلاستيك	share	يشارك
soil	التربة	career	حياة مهنية
stone	الحجر	experience	خبرة
wood	الخشب	promotion	ترقية
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	skill	مهارة
crude oil	البترول الخام	talent	موهبة
wave power	طاقة الأمواج	train	يتدرب / يتمرن
wind power	طاقة الرياح	responsible	مسؤول
tidal power	طاقة المد و الجذر	metropolitan	عاصمي (متعلق بالعاصمة)
solar power	طاقة شمسية	supportive	مؤيد / داعم
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية	application	طلب التقدم لوظيفة
electrical energy	طاقة كهربية	member	عضو
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
oil well	بئر نفط		

Help your child revise Unit (5).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.



Important expressions and prepositions

use ...... for	يستخدم .... لـ	types of	أنواع من
look around	ينظر حول	made up of	يتكون من
use up	يستهلك	be made of	مصنوع من
turn into	يتحول إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
around the world	حول العالم	around 80%	حوالي ٨٠٪
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	look after	يعتني بـ
next to	بجوار	come from	يأتي من

Present Simple "with the third person singular"

زمن المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر المفرد الغائب

Form: He /She /It /Singular noun + verb + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He wakes up at seven o'clock. e.g. She catches the bus to go home.

Spelling rules:

1- With most verbs, we add (s)

معظم الأفعال نضيف لها (s).

drink → drinks help → helps

2- Verbs that end in (s, z, ch, sh, x, o), we add (es)

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (s, z, ch, sh, x, o) نضيف لها (es).

pass → passes watch → watches go → goes

3- Verbs that end in a (consonat + y), we cross y and add ies

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y وقبلة حرف ساكن، نحذف y ونضيف ies .

dry → dries study → studies

4- Verbs that end in a (vowel + y), we add only (s)

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف متحرك، نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

5- Some verbs change

بعض الأفعال تتغير

have → has be → is

Possessive adjectives

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
I	my
He (A	his
She (Amira)	her
It (cat)	its
We	our
You	your
They (children)	their



Rules of using possessive adjectives. قواعد استخدام صفات الملكية.

- Use his when the noun is a boy.
- Use [illegible] when the noun is a girl.
- Use [illegible] when it's not important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl.
- Use their when the noun is plural.



لاحظ أن (No one - Someone) تعامل معاملة المفرد، لكن الضمير الذي يعود عليهما يكون جمعا (their).

General Activities

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from ....
   a) forest b) nature c) people d) school
2. We use .... to construct buildings and bridges.
   a) stone b) plastic c) wood d) soil
3. We get wood from ....
   a) farms b) rivers c) forests d) deserts
4. .... and silver are types of minerals.
   a) Gold b) Stone c) Wood d) Bridge

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mariam studied .... at Cairo University.
   a) engineering b) nursing c) teaching d) farming
2. Mariam worked at a .... farm in Kenya.
   a) cold b) cool c) wind d) hot
3. Mariam worked at a turbine factory in ....
   a) Egypt b) Spain c) England d) Kenya
4. Mariam is a .... person.
   a) angry b) calm c) tired d) nervous

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

gas - fuels - nature - non-renewable

Mennah : Can people make natural resources of energy?
Yara : No, they can't. They come from 1) ....
Mennah : What do you know about fossil fuels?
Yara : They are 2) .... resources.
Mennah : What are the kinds of fossil fuels?
Yara : Coal, oil and natural 3) ....

- Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

project - train - promotion - career

1. Nadia would like to have a .... in medicine.
2. Ahmed did his science .... on tidal power.
3. After two years, Mr. Ali got a .... to be a senior manager.
4. You will have to .... for two months.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. .... is a renewable resource of energy.
   a) Coal b) Wind c) Oil d) Petroleum
2. Fossil fuels cause global ....
   a) problem b) warning c) wearing d) warming
3. Solar panels turn the energy from the .... into electricity.
   a) sun b) air c) wind d) waves
4. Wind and water are .... resources.
   a) renewable b) non-renewable c) fossil d) solar
5. Solar panels don't work well if the weather is ....
   a) sunny b) hot c) windy d) rainy
6. We take wood from ....
   a) forests b) seas c) rivers d) farms
7. We grow vegetables and fruits in ....
   a) ground b) stone c) soil d) sea
8. Solar panels are ....
   a) cheap b) unimportant c) bad d) expensive
9. Try to find .... to your problems.
   a) pollution b) solutions c) promotion d) population
10. " .... " is to teach someone to do a job.
   a) Training b) Practice c) Talent d) Career

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

11. Be happy and stay .... Don't get upset about things.
    a) angry   b) noisy   c) calm   d) rude
12. " .... " is the ability to do something well.
    a) Experience   b) To train   c) Career   d) Skill
13. You should .... with your team members.
    a) fight   b) collaborate   c) generate   d) ignore
14. " .... " is when you get a higher position.
    a) Career   b) Promotion   c) Talent   d) Skill

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.** **(Grammar)**

1. Hana .... up at 7 every day.
   a) wake   b) wakes   c) woke   d) waken
2. Lara did .... science project.
   a) her   b) my   c) their   d) his
3. Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He .... cars.
   a) fix   b) fixes   c) fixed   d) fixing
4. Hany presented .... project to the class.
   a) they   b) our   c) their   d) his
5. Magdy .... his answers quickly.
   a) to finish   b) finishes   c) finish   d) finishing
6. I visited .... grandma last Friday.
   a) mine   b) ours   c) its   d) my
7. Talia sometimes .... TV.
   a) watching   b) watched   c) watch   d) watches
8. Both children presented .... projects.
   a) its   b) her   c) their   d) his
9. Our cat .... a lot of water.
   a) drink   b) drunk   c) drinking   d) drinks
10. He was nervous about .... projects.
    a) hers   b) his   c) theirs   d) mine

- Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

project - train - promotion - career

1. Nadia would like to have a .... in medicine.
2. Ahmed did his science .... on tidal power.
3. After two years, Mr. Ali got a .... to be a senior manager.
4. You will have to .... for two months.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. .... is a renewable resource of energy.
   a) Coal b) Wind c) Oil d) Petroleum
2. Fossil fuels cause global ....
   a) problem b) warning c) wearing d) warming
3. Solar panels turn the energy from the .... into electricity.
   a) sun b) air c) wind d) waves
4. Wind and water are .... resources.
   a) renewable b) non-renewable c) fossil d) solar
5. Solar panels don't work well if the weather is ....
   a) sunny b) hot c) windy d) rainy
6. We take wood from ....
   a) forests b) seas c) rivers d) farms
7. We grow vegetables and fruits in ....
   a) ground b) stone c) soil d) sea
8. Solar panels are ....
   a) cheap b) unimportant c) bad d) expensive
9. Try to find .... to your problems.
   a) pollution b) solutions c) promotion d) population
10. " .... " is to teach someone to do a job.
   a) Training b) Practice c) Talent d) Career

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

11. Be happy and stay .... Don't get upset about things.
a) angry b) noisy c) calm d) rude

12. " .... " is the ability to do something well.
a) Experience b) To train c) Career d) Skill

13. You should .... with your team members.
a) fight b) collaborate c) generate d) ignore

14. " .... " is when you get a higher position.
a) Career b) Promotion c) Talent d) Skill

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)**

1. Hana .... up at 7 every day.
a) wake b) wakes c) woke d) waken

2. Lara did .... science project.
a) her b) my c) their d) his

3. Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He .... cars.
a) fix b) fixes c) fixed d) fixing

4. Hany presented .... project to the class.
a) they b) our c) their d) his

5. Magdy .... his answers quickly.
a) to finish b) finishes c) finish d) finishing

6. I visited .... grandma last Friday.
a) mine b) ours c) its d) my

7. Talia sometimes .... TV.
a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

8. Both children presented .... projects.
a) its b) her c) their d) his

9. Our cat .... a lot of water.
a) drink b) drunk c) drinking d) drinks

10. He was nervous about .... projects.
a) hers b) his c) theirs d) mine

11. She .... to school at 7:30.
   a) go   b) gone   c) goes   d) going

12. No one raised .... hand to ask a question.
   a) his   b) her   c) our   d) their

13. Nour .... the dishes every day.
   a) wash   b) washes   c) washing   d) washed

14. Ali and Ahmed play with .... friends.
   a) theirs   b) their   c) her   d) his

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are two kinds of natural resources, renewable and non-renewable resources. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Non-renewable resources are things like metal and petroleum. The non-renewable resources have a dangerous problem. The problem is once we have used all of them up. We can't get any more here on Earth.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Renewable resources can be .... replaced.
   a) naturally   b) normally   c) regularly   d) quickly

2. " .... " is non-renewable.
   a) Wind   b) Sun   c) Metal   d) Water

3. The underlined words "run out" mean to ....
   a) start   b) finish   c) renew   d) come

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the kinds of natural resources?

....

5. What is the problem of the non-renewable resources?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. can't - energy - We - destroy - .

....

2. sunlight - Solar - collect - panels - .

....

3. non-renewable - Fossil - are - fuels - resources - .

....

4. two - resources - There - of - kinds - are - natural - .

....

6 Write an email to apply for a job.

We are looking for solar power engineers. Are you creative? Do you have any experience of working in renewable energies?

Please write to:

Mr. Mahmoud Gamal,Gamal Design and Technology

MahmoudGamal @gmail.com

To: ....

Subject: ....

Dear: ....,

....

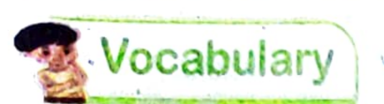
....

....

....

....

Unit (6) Let's work



Vocabulary كلمات

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
transportation	النقل والمواصلات	characters	عناصر / رموز / حروف
air	الجو	search engine	محرك بحث
pipes	أنابيب / مواسير	password	كلمة المرور
rail	السكة الحديد	passphrase	عبارة المرور
roads	الطرق	symbol	رمز
water	الماء	specific	محدد / معين
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	browser	متصفح
entrepreneurs	رواد الأعمال	link	رابط
ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	account	حساب
containers	حاويات	podcast	نشرة صوتية
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	career	الحياة المهنية
freight trains	قطارات الشحن	relaxing	مريح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
get water from	يحصل على الماء من	stop for	يتوقف لأجل
travel on a/an	يسافر بـ	have to	يجب أن
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	go along	يسير بمحاذاة
look out of	ينظر للخارج من	do research	يعمل بحث
think about	يفكر في	travel past	يسافر مارًا بـ
learn about	يتعلم عن	come to	يصل إلى
wait for	ينتظر	go through	ينتقل خلال
come back to	يعود إلى	hard work	عمل (جاد / شاق)

Help your child revise Unit (6).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Present Perfect Tense
زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + have		+ P.P (التصريف الثالث)
He / She / It / Singular noun + has		

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + haven't	+ P.P ....
He / She / It / Singular noun + hasn't	

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)	+ P.P .....?
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)	

- Have you ever been on a train?
  - Yes I have - No I haven't
- Has she ever traveled on a ship?
  - Yes she has - No she hasn't

Wh-question

Q.W + have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + P.P .....?
Q.W + has + (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P .....?

- Where have you been? I've been to Luxor.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

just	توًا - حالًا	already	بالفعل	yet	حتى الآن - بعد
ever	من قبل - سبق	never	أبدًا	since	منذ
for	لمدة				

Prepositions of transport

حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

We use (by) with means of transportation.

نستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات.

- by airplane - by bus - by train - by ship - by air - by water

When there is (a, an or the) before the means of transportation, we use:

عند وجود فاصل مثل (the و a , an) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم.

1. (in) for transportation in which we can't move. (private transportation).

نستخدم in مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها. (المواصلات الخاصة).

- in a taxi - in a car - in our van

2. (on) transportation on which you can move. (public transportation).

نستخدم on مع الوسائل التي يمكننا التحرك فيها (المواصلات العامة)

- on a train - on a bus - on an airplane

Note : on foot ماشيًا على الأقدام.



Usage الاستخدام

- **We use (will + inf.) to make predictions about the future:**

نستخدم (will + inf.) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل.

e.g. Children will take a flying taxi to school.

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + (will سوف) + inf.

e.g. Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.

e.g. People will travel to Mars in 2052.

Note:

'll = will

e.g. I will visit my uncle. = I'll visit my uncle.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريبًا
next (week - year - etc..)	(الأسبوع ، العام ،...) القادم	I think	أنا أعتقد ...
in the future	في المستقبل		

in + future time (2030 - 2052) في + (وقت في المستقبل)

e.g. They will travel to Aswan tomorrow.

e.g. We will travel to the moon in the future.

Negative النفي

Subject + will not (won't) + inf.

e.g. Robots won't drive trains next year.

e.g. My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.

Note:

won't = will + not

Interrogative الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Will + subject + inf. ......?

- Will you travel to the moon one day?

  - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

- Will he go to school tomorrow?

  - Yes, he will. - No, he won't.

Wh-question

Question word + will + subject + inf. ......?

- How will you learn English in the future?

- I will learn English from the internet.

- Where will you live?

- I will live in a smart city.

General Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hend looked out of the .... of her family's house.
   a) window b) taxi c) door d) car
2. She looked at the .... going along the Suez Canal.
   a) ships b) boats c) birds d) cars
3. The ships were so ....
   a) wide b) bad c) big d) small
4. Hend often watched the ships with her ....
   a) mom b) parents c) friends d) dad

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can .... goods by water over long distances.
   a) help b) plan c) fill d) transport
2. Ships move ....
   a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) carefully
3. .... can carry large items.
   a) Bikes b) Airplanes c) Planes d) Ships
4. Airplanes are .... than ships.
   a) heavier b) faster c) cheaper d) slower

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

plane - foot - bus - drives

Ahmed : How do you go to school?
Sara : I go to school by 1) .... What about you?
Ahmed : My father 2) .... me to school.
Sara : Where will you spend the holiday?
Ahmed : In Aswan. We will go there on a 3) ....
Sara : Have a nice time.

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

safe - Experience - technology - Designer

There are a lot of tech jobs. One of them is a UX 1) .... .UX is short for User Experience . UX Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the 2) .... that you use. They make sure that it is 3) .... and useful for all users.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The government will send water to the cities through ....
   a) roads b) pipes c) air d) trains
2. Going by .... is more comfortable than driving.
   a) bike b) rail c) pipes d) road
3. The ancient Egyptians sent most of their goods by .... on the River Nile.
   a) rail b) plane c) air d) water
4. The best way to get from the suburbs to the center of the city is by ....
   a) pipes b) road c) air d) water
5. We will use autonomous .... to do dangerous jobs.
   a) machines b) cars c) trains d) doctors
6. We will use high-speed .... in the future.
   a) ships b) bikes c) trains d) vans
7. A .... is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites.
   a) search engine b) browser c) keyboard d) link
8. You can use a .... to look at web pages on the internet.
   a) browser b) password c) link d) search
9. I'm doing some .... for my science project.
   a) research b) browsers c) options d) lines
10. Use more than 8 .... when making a password.
    a) characters b) sentences c) words d) numbers
11. Use the .... search option in the browser.
    a) dangerous b) bad c) unsafe d) safe

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

12. Ships go along the Suez ....
    a) River b) Lake c) Sea d) Canal
13. I'll wait .... you at the market.
    a) to b) for c) on d) at
14. We go to school .... foot.
    a) with b) in c) of d) on

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1. People will .... to the moon for holidays.
   a) go b) gone c) going d) goes
2. We .... drive cars that use petroleum.
   a) not will b) aren't c) will no d) won't
3. There .... a personal robot at home.
   a) are b) be c) am d) will be
4. People won't .... fossil fuels to heat their houses.
   a) using b) used c) uses d) use
5. Will you go to university? Yes, ...
   a) will you b) I will c) I won't d) you will
6. All buildings .... solar panels on their roofs in the future.
   a) has b) have c) having d) will have
7. People .... watch the news on television.
   a) isn't b) won't c) hasn't d) doesn't
8. We will .... a space station on Mars.
   a) had b) have c) has d) having
9. Will you learn to drive a car? No, I ....
   a) am b) will c) am not d) won't
10. There .... self-driving cars in the future.
    a) are b) am c) will be d) be
11. .... people live on the moon one day?
    a) Have b) Are c) Will d) Does

12. Robots will .... airplanes in the future.

a) fly b) flies c) flew d) flying

13. We will play tennis ....

a) yesterday b) last week c) ago d) tomorrow

14. .... go to the club next week?

a) You will b) Will you c) Have you d) Are you

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food. Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ships move ....

a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) badly

2. It's good to transfer fresh food by ....

a) ships b) cars c) airplanes d) trains

3. Airplanes are .... than ships.

a) slower b) faster c) shorter d) quieter

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How can we transport goods long distances?

....

5. What is used for carrying oil and water?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. never - plane - I've - by - traveled - .

....

2. friends - Don't - your - tell - passwords - your - .

....

3. fly - Robots - will - the future - in - airplanes - .

....

4. live - moon - Will - the - on - people - ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Being safe online

Guiding elements:

(Internet - password - friends - information - option)

....

....

....

....

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

Transportation

Guiding elements:

(air - water - road - rail - goods - ships)

....

....

....

....

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past
is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
become	يصبح	became
burn	يحرق	burnt
build	يبني	built
choose	يختار	chose
catch	يمسك	caught
come	يأتي	came
drive	يسوق - يقود	drove
do	يفعل	did
draw	يرسم	drew
drink	يشرب	drank
go	يذهب	went
eat	يأكل	ate
feel	يشعر	felt
fly	يطير	flew
feed	يطعم	fed
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got
give	يعطي	gave
grow	يزرع	grew
hear	يسمع	heard
have	يمتلك	had

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
lay	تضع (البيض)	laid
let	يدع - يسمح	let
make	يصنع	made
meet	يقابل	met
put	يضع	put
run out	ينفد	ran out
run	يجري	ran
hide	يختبئ - يخفي	hid
tell	يخبر	told
take	يأخذ	took
take part	يشارك	took part
spin	يغزل - ينسج	spun
sit	يجلس	sat
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
smell	يشم	smelt
swim	يسبح	swam
sing	يغني	sang
wake	يستيقظ	woke
wear	يرتدي	wore
write	يكتب	wrote
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

إدارة بندر كفر الدوار التعليمية (1)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Shaza has a pet ....
   a) cat b) dog c) rabbit d) fish
2. The pet needs a .... house.
   a) dirty b) big c) long d) clean
3. Take your pet to a .... if it is sick.
   a) engineer b) farmer c) doctor d) vet
4. Don't drop .... because it can make animals sick.
   a) food b) trash c) water d) seeds

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

What - club - What time - volleyball

Ahmed : Hi! How are you?
Hady : Hello, I'm fine.
Ahmed : Where will you go tomorrow?
Hady : I will go to the 1) ....
Ahmed : What will you do at the club?
Hady : I will play 2) .... there.
Ahmed : 3) .... will you be back?
Hady : I will be back at seven o'clock.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Mostafa. I'm in primary four. I like my school. My father, Hani is a baker. He works in a bakery next to our house. He sells bread to people. My sister Heba is a nurse. She helps doctors. She takes care of the patients. She smiles at them. All patients love her. She also looks after our family. My parents are very kind and help me a lot.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Heba is a ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) baker d) nurse
2. Mostafa is in primary ....
   a) four b) two c) three d) five
3. Heba helps ....
   a) doctors b) engineers c) fire fighter d) cleaners

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Hany work?

....

5. Why do patients love Heba?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was bored on the summer holiday. ( )
2. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was the second week of the ....
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
2. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya street.
   a) footballers b) teachers c) artisans d) bakers



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is my book. It's ....
   a) my b) mine c) her d) their
2. .... she play the piano yesterday?
   a) Did b) Do c) Are d) Was
3. Adel likes fish, ... he doesn't like meat.
   a) and b) but c) who d) nose
4. How .... do you travel to America?
   a) tall b) often c) many d) much
5. Ahmed .... to school yesterday.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) is going

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. doing - today - What - you - are - ?

....

2. in - important - Scribes - were - ancient Egypt - .

....

3. a - car - Do - have - you - red - ?

....



7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

My plants and animals

Guiding elements:

(oxygen - breathe - healthy - grow - like - nice)

....

....

....

إدارة محافظة القليوبية (2)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Where do the monkeys live? ....
   a) trees   b) den   c) kennel   d) streets
2. What do monkeys like to eat? ....
   a) fish   b) bananas   c) oranges   d) sweets
3. What is a group of monkeys called? ....
   a) bunch   b) pride   c) troop   d) herd
4. Monkeys have long ....
   a) noses   b) tails   c) ears   d) necks

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

nose - hand - body - lungs

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air with our 1) .... It goes to the 2) .... In the lungs, oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps the blood around our 3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mr Adham is a famous cook. He is a chef at the best restaurant in Alexandria. He likes his job and tries to find new kinds of food to serve. People who eat his food say, "His food is the best in Alexandria". He wants to open his own restaurant. It will be clean and the prices will be good, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mr. Adham is good at ....
   a) swimming   b) cooking   c) playing   d) diving
2. The prices in the new restaurants will be ....
   a) delicious   b) free   c) clean   d) good
3. He works in ....
   a) Cairo   b) Luxor   c) Alexandria   d) Aswan

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do people say about Mr. Adham's food?
....
5. What does Mr. Adham want to do?
....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab asked her grandpa to stop sewing Khayameya. [ ]
2. Grandpa's father taught him how to sew. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab wanted to visit her ....
   a) Grandpa   b) uncle   c) teachers   d) friends
2. The picture of a flower is made of thousands of small ....
   a) cotton   b) stitches   c) colors   d) patterns

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... English every day.
   a) study b) studying c) studies d) is studying
2. Snails move very ....
   a) slow b) slowly c) good d) quick
3. My car is .... car.
   a) fastest b) faster c) fast d) the fastest
4. This is my pen. It is ....
   a) theirs b) yours c) mine d) hers
5. .... Ahmed watch too much TV last night?
   a) Did b) Is c) Does d) Do

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. goes - food - The - to - our - stomach - .

....

2. senses - do - How - our - we - use - ?

....

3. through take in - Fish - oxygen - gills - their - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

My community

Guiding elements:

(family - friends - school - neighborhood)

....

....

....

....

إدارة رشيد التعليمية (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use the .... system when we eat.
   a) digestive b) respiratory c) solar d) school
2. We use the respiratory system when we ....
   a) drink b) breathe c) play d) Walk
3. Our .... is made up of all the bones.
   a) head b) brain c) skeleton d) hair
4. .... protect our organs.
   a) Legs b) Bones c) Arms d) Feet

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

oil - renewable - gases - non-renewable

Ahmed : What do you know about fossil fuels?
Hany : They are 1) .... resources.
Ahmed : What are the kinds of fossil fuels?
Hany : They are coal, 2) .... and natural gas.
Ahmed : Why are they dangerous?
Hany : They produce greenhouse 3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Egypt is my country. It is great and famous. Many tourists come to Egypt to enjoy the fine weather. It is cool in summer and warm in winter. Tourists like visiting tourist places. They visit the pyramids at Giza, the temples at Luxor and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. There are a lot of famous beaches in Egypt. They can go swimming and have a good time on the sand there. The Nile is the longest river in the world. You can enjoy boat trips on it. There are twenty seven governorates in Egypt. I love my country very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... in Egypt is warm in winter.
   a) Nile b) weather c) temple d) tourist
2. The Nile is the longest .... in the world.
   a) sea b) lake c) river d) country
3. Tourists can visit Luxor to enjoy the ....
   a) beach b) temples c) pyramids d) Egyptian Museum

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many governorates are there in Egypt?

....

5. Why do tourists come to Egypt?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers. ( )
2. Zeinab's friends are very clever. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa's .... are not very good now.
   a) legs b) eyes c) ears d) legs
2. Grandpa wanted to be a .... or an engineer.
   a) doctor b) farmer c) teacher d) guide

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This is Mona's bag. It's ....
   a) her b) his c) hers d) my
2. Let's .... to the park.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
3. He always .... TV in the evening.
   a) watch b) watches c) watching d) watched
4. Who .... you visit last Friday?
   a) do b) did c) does d) can
5. Ancient Egyptians .... papyrus for writing.
   a) used b) use c) uses d) using



Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. blood - the body - Our - around - pumps - heart - .

....

2. a rainy day - on - We - can't - solar power - make - .

....

3. live - Cairo - How - many - in - people - ?

....



Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

My city

Guiding elements:

(live - big - many people - cars - shops - park - beautiful)

....

....

....

إدارة كوم حماده التعليمية (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Physical activity is .... for your body.
   a) bad b) good c) silly d) ugly
2. Physical activity makes our .... strong.
   a) muscles b) ears c) noses d) lungs
3. It helps us use up the .... we get from food.
   a) groceries b) calories c) vitamins d) protein
4. .... activities are good for our brain.
   a) Dental b) Mental c) Free d) Head

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

team - food - in - took

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He 1) .... part in the Rio Paralympics, where the 2) .... won bronze. He has played with his team 3) .... Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions in Egypt.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Hana. My sister's birthday is tomorrow. I don't have money so I think it is better to make her a special present. My sister likes toys, but she broke her doll last week. The doll is in her room, so I took the doll and started to fix it. I made a new pink dress to the doll as my sister likes pink colour. I used some cotton to make the doll's hair. The doll looks beautiful. My sister is happy now. She has a beautiful doll.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My sister likes ....
   a) skulls b) sweets c) skirt d) dolls
2. Hana's sister is .... with her birthday present.
   a) ill b) upset c) happy d) sad
3. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to Hana's ....
   a) mother b) niece c) sister d) aunt

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When is Hana's sister's birthday?
....
5. What did Hana fix for her sister?
....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab was bored.
2. Zeinab went to her grandparents by bus.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was the second week of the ....
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
2. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya street.
   a) footballer b) teachers c) artisans d) bakers

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. We usually .... football after school.
   a) played b) plays c) playing d) play
3. He .... the army yesterday.
   a) joined b) joins c) join d) joining
4. Prince Charles .... a king.
   a) becomes b) became c) become d) to become
5. People .... to Mars for vacation in 2052..
   a) travel b) travels c) traveled d) will travel

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. folk music - lots - Egypt - has - traditional - of - .

....

2. our nose - through - We - breathe - air - in - .

....

3. language - learn - sign - People - deaf - who - are - can - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A visit to the zoo

Guiding elements:

(zoo - last week - family - car - saw - animals - birds - played - lunch - came back)

....

....

....

إدارة محافظة الإسكندرية (5)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our .... system to digest food.
   a) nervous b) digestive c) urinary d) respiratory
2. We chew food with our ....
   a) tongue b) teeth c) lips d) eyes
3. In the ...., the food mixes with a special liquid.
   a) heart b) nose c) stomach d) leg
4. The liquid changes the food into ....
   a) energy b) oil c) milk d) protein

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fruits - water - green - villages

In the past, life was very difficult. People lived in small 1) .... They worked hard. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They grew many 2) .... and vegetables. Today, they live a good life. There is enough water. Farmers plant trees and flowers to make the land 3) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The zoo is one of the most interesting places for young children. They can see animals from different countries. Some people do not like zoos. They think that it is bad to keep animals in cages. Other people think that if the cage is large, the animals will be happy. In the zoo, animals have enough food. Small animals are safe. Large animals like tigers, lions and elephants are unhappy in cages because they are used to wide, open places. Most children enjoy visiting the zoo. They usually prefer to look at large animals, but some of them are very unkind.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... is an interesting place for young children.

a) zoo b) hospital c) market d) mall

2. In the zoo, small animals are ....

a) angry b) unhappy c) safe d) unsafe

3. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to .... animals.

a) wide b) small c) large d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What can children see in the zoo?

....

5. Why are large animals unhappy in the zoo?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates. ☐

2. Coral reefs do not need sunlight to live and to grow. ☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tropical fish can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of ....

a) camouflage b) sport c) system d) food

2. The Red Sea coral reef is the .... coral reef system in Africa.

a) youngest b) largest c) smallest d) fastest

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a) bigger b) biggest c) big d) fastest
3. This is our school. It's ....
   a) we b) us c) ours d) our
4. Mena was the pharaoh who .... the two parts of Egypt.
   a) unites b) unite c) united d) uniting
5. All buildings will .... solar panels on their roofs.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. don't - insects - Why - write - you - about - ?

....

2. take - oxygen - Fish - through - in - gills - .

....

3. eating - my hands - I - always - wash - before - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Having a pet

Guiding elements:

(watch - look after - species - walk - exercise - expensive)

....

....

....

إدارة محافظة دمياط (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The human body is made up of a number of .... systems.
   a) different   b) nervous   c) some   d) same
2. The respiratory system helps us to ....
   a) taste   b) breathe   c) digest   d) eat
3. Each system is made up of ....
   a) organs   b) bodies   c) dots   d) sounds
4. The stomach is part of the .... system.
   a) respiratory   b) circulatory   c) digestive   d) productive

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

together - shares - positive - problem

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. The best teamwork is that where each person 1) .... ideas and skills. When you're working in a team, make sure to listen to others' ideas. You should be a 2) .... solver when there is a problem. Remember to complete your part of the project. Be 3) .... and help the other team members to be more successful.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Computers are very important in the world of modern technology. People can use them in many ways. They can book tickets, buy goods and sell things. Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports. At homes, computers can answer telephones and e-mails. By using computers people can save time. Although computers have many advantages, they also have some disadvantages. Young children use computers to play games for long hours. Sitting still isn't good for their health. It can destroy their eyes and their bones.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) homes b) teachers c) reports d) computers
2. The underlined word "destroy" in the text means ....
   a) hurt b) tell c) answer d) make
3. Computers can book ....
   a) goods b) tickets c) games d) exams

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How can people use computers at school?

....

5. Get one disadvantage of using computers.

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral polyps have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white.
2. Zeinab traveled to her grandparent's house by bus.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The water of the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
   a) warmer b) smaller c) easier d) cooler
2. The Khayameya picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....
   a) problems b) stitches c) ideas d) eyes

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....
   a) slow b) slowly c) slower d) slowest
2. People .... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.
   a) were starting b) are starting c) start d) started
3. I do my homework .... I'm ready for the next lesson.
   a) even though b) after c) while d) so that
4. The children made .... mom a cup of mint tea.
   a) her b) their c) them d) theirs
5. We .... drive cars that use petroleum in 2040.
   a) don't b) didn't c) won't d) haven't

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. grow - use - to - Plants - water - .

....

2. ever - on - Have - traveled - you - a train - ?

....

3. water - in - Amphibians - always - lay - their eggs - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

A place you would like to visit

Guiding elements:

(bus - food - photos - family - interesting - spend - happy time)

....

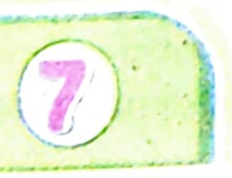
....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Exam 7



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The largest organ in our body is the ....
   a) head b) brain c) heart d) skin
2. Water can't get through the .... layer.
   a) second b) middle c) bottom d) top
3. Our skin protects us from the ....
   a) sun b) dirt c) germs d) a,b and c
4. The .... layer attaches your skin to your bones and muscles.
   a) bottom b) middle c) top d) first

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

plane - will - bus - drives

Ahmed : How do you go to school?
Sara : I go to school by 1) .... What about you?
Ahmed : My father 2) .... me to school.
Sara : Where will you spend the holiday?
Ahmed : In Aswan. We will go there on a 3) ....
Sara : Have a nice time.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mr. Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Sunday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch, chicken and potatoes. Yesterday it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr. Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant, near the school. He loves the food there.



A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The weather is sometimes .... in Port Said.
   a) rainy   b) sunny   c) cloudy   d) hot
2. The underlined word "there" is the opposite of ....
   a) today   b) tonight   c) here   d) ago
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) lunch   b) home   c) sandwich   d) chicken

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Mr. Taha work?

....

5. Why did Mr. Taha have lunch at the restaurant?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Coral polyps move from a place to another. ( )
2. Grandfather thanked the girls for coming. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. Coral reefs are made from thousands of ....
   a) invertebrates   b) reptiles   c) plants   d) spiders
2. The Red Sea coral is the .... largest reef system in the world.
   a) first   b) second   c) third   d) forth

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sometimes people .... unhealthy snakes.
   a) is eating   b) eat   c) eating   d) eats
2. The .... animal on the land is a mammal.
   a) big   b) bigger   c) biggest   d) the biggest
3. Wael .... only one sister. She is pretty.
   a) have   b) has   c) having   d) had
4. She likes the job .... it's hard.
   a) before   b) after   c) so that   d) although
5. Snails moves very ....
   a) slow   b) slowly   c) to slow   d) slowness



Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. don't - invertebrates - Why - write - you - about - ?

   ....

2. develop - not - Try - to - habits - unhealthy - .

   ....

3. music - traditional - Egypt - has - lots of - folk - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Human body

Guiding elements:

(Human body - 206 bones - strong - hard - not heavy - foods - good for you - bad)

....

....

....

....



Exam



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There are a lot of sports in ....
   a) England b) Egypt c) China d) USA
2. I'm good at playing ....
   a) football b) basketball c) volleyball d) tennis
3. I love watching football matches on ....
   a) smartphone b) computer c) TV d) radio
4. I am not good at playing ....
   a) football b) squash c) volleyball d) tennis

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

west - Pyramids - Governorate - visit

Ahmed : Where do you live?
Aseel : I live in Giza 1) ....
Ahmed : Where is it?
Aseel : It's 2) .... of Cairo, and it's a large area.
Ahmed : What places can I visit there?
Aseel : You can visit the 3) .... and the Sphinx.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a) plants b) planets c) colors d) soil
2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to plants such as ....
   a) sunflower b) water lily c) orange d) carrots
3. The water lily has a ...., flat leaf.
   a) small b) thin c) tiny d) large

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where do most plants grow?

....

5. Where do the roots of the water lily spread?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab visited her uncle. ( )
2. Rasha is good at math. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab was .... on summer holiday.
   a) happy b) interested c) excited d) bored
2. Zeinab's friends are ....
   a) clever b) bad c) naughty d) sad

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I do my homework .... I go to bed.
   a) while b) after c) as soon as d) before
2. Sloths are .... than tortoises.
   a) slow b) slower c) slowest d) the slowest
3. What will you .... for lunch tomorrow?
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
4. Monkeys can climb trees ....
   a) easy b) easily c) ease d) easiness
5. The brain .... the most important organ of the body.
   a) be b) is c) are d) has

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. jump - can - A grasshopper - high - .

....

2. feathers - All - have - birds - .

....

3. tortoises - than - sloths - are - faster - Giant - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Our senses

Guiding elements:

(eyes - hear - touch - smell - tongue)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have a nice variety of weather in ....
   a) China   b) India   c) Egypt   d) France
2. We have very .... summers.
   a) hot   b) cold   c) warm   d) cool
3. Our .... are cooler.
   a) summers   b) winters   c) falls   d) springs
4. It doesn't often rain in ....
   a) Cairo   b) Aswan   c) Tanta   d) Banha

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fins - lay - breathe - oxygen

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't

1) .... air. They are cold-blooded and they

2) .... eggs. They also have scales and they use

3) .... to move.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Dina. I live in Alexandria with my family. We live in an apartment in a neighborhood called Smoha. There are 5 people in my family; my parents, my brother, my sister and me. We have a lot of services in my city. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where I can buy anything I need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. Montaza Palace is my favorite place.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "parents" refers to ....
   a) father b) mother c) sister d) a & b
2. Dina lives in a/an ....
   a) house b) villa c) shop d) apartment
3. Dina can buy anything she needs from the ....
   a) schools b) shops c) hospitals d) neighborhood

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Dina live?

....

5. What is Dina's favorite place?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Rasha is bad at math. ( )
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rasha is great at ....
   a) English b) Arabic c) math d) science
2. Grandpa was one of the .... makers.
   a) car b) star c) tent d) shoe

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I wash my face .... I get up.
   a) before b) so that c) while d) after
2. Horses are .... than humans.
   a) strong b) stronger c) strongest d) more strong
3. People will .... to Mars in the future.
   a) travel b) traveling c) traveled d) travels
4. Kareem .... to school every day.
   a) walking b) walks c) walked d) walk
5. People .... living in Egypt thousands of years ago.
   a) start b) starts c) will start d) started

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - than - A blue whale - a whale shark - bigger - .

   ....

2. get - I - exercising - after - tired - .

   ....

3. the environment - bad - Greenhouse - are - gases - for - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Being healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy - food - exercise - sport - water - sleep - TV)

....

....

....



Exam 10

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Pupils paint and draw pictures in .... lessons.
   a) art b) English c) science d) maths
2. English is the .... of England.
   a) subject b) lesson c) picture d) language
3. Maths lessons help us learn about ....
   a) pictures b) languages c) numbers d) letters
4. Pupils like their ....
   a) hospital b) class c) school d) park

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

book - bus - go - went

Sara : Where did you go yesterday?
Heba : I 1) .... to the library.
Sara : How did you go there?
Heba : I went by 2) ....
Sara : Did you borrow a 3) ....?
Heba : Yes, I did.



3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports. My cousin, Nadia, lives in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fares lives in the .... Governorate.
   a) Red Sea   b) Aswan   c) Luxor   d) Cairo
2. The underlined word "farthest" is the opposite of ....
   a) nearest   b) biggest   c) smallest   d) first
3. The Red Sea Governorate has a beach which is over one .... km.
   a) hundred   b) thousand   c) million   d) decade

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where is Aswan?
....
5. When did the engineers finish the Aswan High Dam?
....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zeinab's grandparents were sad to see her. ( )
2. Lobna invents things all the time. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....
   a) train   b) ship   c) car   d) bus
2. Rasha is good at ....
   a) Arabic   b) math   c) tennis   d) sewing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. An adult brain .... about 1400 grams.
   a) weigh b) weighs c) weighed d) weighing
2. They play tennis .... school.
   a) so that b) although c) after d) while
3. The blue whale is the .... sea animal.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest
4. Ahmed does his homework ....
   a) well b) good c) bad d) dangerous
5. Lara and Youssef visited .... cousins in Aswan.
   a) her b) his c) their d) them

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. to - day - Noha - school - every - walks - .

....

2. was - in - Music - Egypt - important - ancient - .

....

3. spaces - big - Solar - need - farms - very - .

....



Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Summer camp

Guiding elements:

(camp - friends - spend - mental activities - sports - competitions - fun)

....

....

....

....



Exam



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. At school, I have .... every day.
   a) art   b) English   c) Arabic   d) science
2. I watch TV .... doing my homework.
   a) before   b) while   c) after   d) when
3. My .... helps me study English.
   a) brother   b) mother   c) sister   d) father
4. My favorite .... is English.
   a) subject   b) book   c) color   d) sport

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

club - practice - lounge - Why

Noha : What are we doing today, mom?
Mom : We have to tidy the 1) ....
Noha : But I want to go to the club .
Mom : 2) .... ?
Noha : Because I want to 3) .... football.
Mom : OK, but first, let's tidy the lounge.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. There are five different types of vertebrates. Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... are animals with a backbone.
   a) Invertebrates b) Vertebrates c) Snakes d) Humans
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) mammals b) birds c) fish d) reptiles
3. Mammals have .... or fur on their bodies.
   a) hair b) hare c) string d) feathers

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How many types of vertebrates are there?

....

5. Which mammals can fly?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The pattern has three layers of cotton. [ ]
2. Grandpa's eyes are very good now. [ ]

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Doha makes amazing ....
   a) art b) colors c) math d) show
2. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a) sad b) bad c) pleased d) mad



5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Snails move very ....
   a) slow b) slowly c) slowest d) slower
2. They .... tired.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
3. I go to school .... I can learn.
   a) to b) so that c) by d) with
4. The giraffe is .... than the horse.
   a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest
5. Most families .... a personal robot at home in the future.
   a) have b) has c) will have d) had



6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. plays - Noura - on Mondays - volleyball - .
....
2. brain - move - Our - how - controls - we - .
....
3. healthy - a good - We - need - diet - to stay - .
....



7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Music

Guiding elements:

(folk - traditional - Saidi - instruments - singing - drumming)

....
....
....





Exam 12

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We went to the park last ....
   a) Thursday b) Friday c) Monday d) Sunday
2. I went to the park with my ....
   a) mother b) uncle c) brother d) father
3. I had lunch at ....
   a) a restaurant b) a cinema c) a shop d) home
4. We went to the market to buy a ....
   a) T-shirt b) coat c) hat d) jacket

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

many - capital - governorates - Cairo

Adam : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, it is. What's the 1) .... of Egypt?

Adam : It's Cairo .

Tourist : How 2) .... governorates are there in Egypt?

Adam : There are 27 3) ....

Tourist : Thank you very much.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful and each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from , , or .

1. "Complicated" means ....

a) easy b) hard c) complex d) soft

2. Carpets are made of Egyptian ....

a) cotton b) paper c) thread d) wool

3. Carpet making is an Egyptian ....

a) sport b) hobby c) subject d) craft

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What colors are often used in Egyptian carpets?

....

5. Who can work quickly?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the tent makers.

2. A few people want to learn.

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Grandpa's eyes are not very .... now.

a) happy b) good c) worse d) bad

2. The pattern has three ....

a) sides b) angles c) layers d) corners

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef .... English.
   a) speak b) spoken c) speaking d) speaks
2. People .... robots in the future.
   a) use b) used c) using d) will use
3. Lara did .... project on global warming.
   a) her b) hers c) his d) she
4. The whale is the .... animal in the sea.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest
5. The dancers use sticks and step .... in special patterns.
   a) quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quickest

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a small - on - I - the Nile - live in - village - .

....

2. people - How - in - many - live - Cairo - ?

....

3. hungry - she - The baby - cries - when - is - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Your governorate

Guiding elements:

(Alexandria - north - sea - large - beaches)

....

....

....



Exam 13

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our teacher gave us some .... yesterday.
   a) information b) advice c) surprises d) gifts
2. He advised us to eat .... food.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) dangerous d) spicy
3. Healthy food is good for our ....
   a) system b) breath c) head d) brain
4. He told us to get enough ....
   a) sleep b) holiday c) food d) money

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

go - bus - visited - saw

Ahmed : Where did you go last summer?
Amr : I went to Alexandria.
Ahmed : How did you 1) .... there?
Amr : I went by 2) ....
Ahmed : What did you see there?
Amr : I 3) .... Qaitbay Fort.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Hanin. I'm in primary four. I'm ten years old. I like maths and English. I live in Behiera Governorate. It is densely populated. There are more than 10 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are lots of cars, so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be careful.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hanin likes math and ....

a) French b) Arabic c) Chinese d) English

2. Behiera Governorate is .... populated.

a) densely b) sparsely c) slowly d) quickly

3. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be ....

a) kind b) careful c) careless d) bad

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Hanin live?

....

5. How many people live in Behiera?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa was one of the best actors in Khayameya. ( )
2. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers. ( )

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Zeinab could .... and help her grandpa.

a) write b) play c) do d) sew

2. Zeinab and her Mom traveled by ....

a) ship b) car c) bus d) train

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Braille .... different combinations of dots.
   a) can b) will c) has d) have
2. Fish take in oxygen through .... gills.
   a) his b) her c) their d) our
3. She ran quickly .... she could catch the bus.
   a) although b) while c) after d) so that
4. People .... to Mars for vacation in 2052.
   a) traveled b) will travel c) travel d) travels
5. The .... animal in the world lives in the sea.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) small

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. plays - Noura - on Mondays - volleyball - .

....

2. brain - move - Our - how - controls - we - .

....

3. well - swim - Some - invertebrates - can - very - .

....

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words about:

Aswan

Guiding elements:

(Aswan - Nile - south - High Dam)

....

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimetres long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua new Guinea. It's 7mm long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects they carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. I am always polite and helpful at school.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Music was important in Ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and Ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Dina lives in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Dina. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family. We are a big family. There are seven people in my family. We live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city. We have a lot of services. My favorite place is Montaza Palace. I visit it with my family once a month.

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resources. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones and they are all natural resources.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She has always been a calm person.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hend looked out of the window of her family's house. She looked at the ships going along the Suez Canal. The ships were so big. She wants to be a ship's captain. She thinks it's a relaxing job. Hend loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Exam (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Shaza. I love keeping pets. I have a pet rabbit. It needs food and water every day. It needs a clean house Look after your pet if it is sick. You can take it to a vet. Don't drop trash because that makes pets sick.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Monkeys are amazing animals. They live in trees. They like to eat bananas. They have long tails.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat. We chew and swallow food and it goes into the stomach. We use the respiratory system when we breathe. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones. Bones protect our organs.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink. We put food in our

mouths. We chew it with our teeth. The food goes down the osophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food mixes with a special liquid. The liquid changes the food into energy.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The human body is made up of a number of different systems. The respiratory system helps us to breathe. Each system is made up of organs. The stomach is part of the digestive system.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it is very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather and warm in cold weather. Our skin has got lots of layers. The top layer is strong. Water can't get through it. The middle layer helps us to feel hot and cold things. It has got blood vessels. The bottom layer attaches your skin to your bones and muscles.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are a lot of sports in Egypt. I'm good at football. I love watching football.
I love watching football matches on TV. I'm not good at playing squash.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers. Our winters are cooler. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Pupils paint and draw pictures in art lessons. They learn English which is the language of England. They learn about numbers in maths lessons. Pupils like their school.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

English is my favourite subject. We have it every day at school. My mother helps me study it at home. After doing my homework, I watch TV.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Last Friday, I went with my brother Ali to the park. We played together. Then we had lunch at a restaurant. We went to the market to buy a jacket.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our teacher gave us some advice yesterday. He advised us to eat healthy food as it's good for our brain. He told us to get enough sleep to think clearly.

AL-BAHER



Model Answers

Model Answers

Book Answers

Lets Remember

Lesson (1)

1) Read and match.

1) c 2) d 3) b 4) a

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sugar 2) to 3) siblings
4) copy editor 5) nutrients 6) metal
7) three-dimensional

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How fast can you run?
2) What taste does it like?

Lesson (2)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) interview 2) course 3) article 4) many

2) Listen and choose.

1) mustn't 2) never 3) If 4) aren't
5) has to 6) was used 7) won't 8) written
9) helmet 10) many 11) water

3) Read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1) ✓ 2) ✓ 3) × 4) ×
5) ✓ 6) ×

4) Circle the words with a different sound.

1) audio 2) swamp 3) dangerous
4) fiction 5) tent 6) acacia

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) digestive 2) swallow 3) stomach 4) energy

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) swallow 2) stomach 3) energy

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) air 2) heart 3) respiratory
4) We use our nose.
5) It goes to our lungs.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) breathe 2) digestive 3) to 4) into
5) nose 6) pumps 7) up of 8) Muscles

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We chew and swallow food.
2) Our heart pumps blood around our body.
3) Bones protect our organs and make us strong.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our body"

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) senses 2) eyes 3) smell 4) skin

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) blind 2) combinations 3) touch

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) senses 2) Deaf 3) tongue
4) We have 5 senses. 5) They use sign language.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) eyes 2) hear 3) nose 4) tongue
5) skin 6) see 7) sign 8) five
9) code 10) language

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) We use our eyes to see.
2) What can you hear?
3) We can feel with our skin.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We have five senses. We use our senses to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

8) Rewrite the sentences with capital letters.

1) Mr Gamal prefers Arabic music to African music.
2) Louis Braille invented the Braille code.
3) Mrs Azza reads Braille because she can't see well.

Model Answers

Lesson 3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) two 2) left 3) right 4) Art

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) tidy 2) do 3) What

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) are 2) does 3) watch 4) go
5) are 6) play 7) What 8) paint
9) have 10) is 11) goes 12) have

4) Correct the verbs

1) is 2) play 3) has 4) looks
5) are 6) are 7) makes 8) sleeps
9) are 10) washes

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) swimming 2) three 3) first 4) won

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) competition 2) disabilities 3) take

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) champion 2) won 3) do
4) gold 5) volleyball

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) Ahmed 2) bronze 3) athlete
4) He plays sitting volleyball. 5) In 2016.

Lessons (5&6)

Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Healthy diet"

Healthy food is very important to our bodies. We should eat vegetables and fruits. We shouldn't eat too many cakes and biscuits. You should drink milk, too. To keep fit you should eat healthy food.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) respiratory 2) air 3) oxygen 4) heart

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) eyes 2) tongue 3) working

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) Paralympic Games 2) happens
3) New Zealand
4) 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races.

5) Yes, it is.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) tent makers 2) sew

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) pumps 2) go 3) need
4) is 5) travels

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) The Paralympic Games is an international competition.
2) Who uses sign language?
3) We need to eat a good diet to stay healthy.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Digestive system"

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) cold-blooded 2) sun
3) four 4) scales

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) feathers 2) eggs 3) beaks

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) five 2) backbone 3) warm 4) Bats
5) Reptiles 6) four 7) moist 8) smooth
9) gills 10) beaks

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) mammals 2) don't lay 3) milk
4) On land. 5) Bats

5) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Amphibians lay eggs in water.
2) There are five types of vertebrates.
3) Mammals are warm-blooded.
4) Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater, and wetlands.

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) smaller 2) bigger 3) stronger
4) bigger 5) than 6) faster
7) biggest 8) The smallest 9) slower
10) longer 11) taller 12) the fastest

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The ostrich is the biggest bird in the world.
2) Ants are stronger than humans.
3) The blue whale is the biggest animal.
4) The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

3) Write correct sentences.

1) Leopards are larger than cheetahs .
2) A bee hummingbird is the smallest bird in the world.
3) Ants are stronger than humans.

4) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) elephant 2) whale 3) Earth

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) cold-blooded 2) swim 3) Arachnids

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) protection 2) invertebrates 3) backbone
4) Spiders 5) fast 6) slowly 7) quickly
8) sadly 9) well 10) soft

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) invertebrates 2) 90% 3) slow
4) On land and in water. 5) Dragonflies

4) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Invertebrates"

Invertebrates don't have backbones . They are cold-blooded. They live in the sea and some live on land. Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells. Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk. Arachnids are not insects. They have eight legs.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) primary 2) secondary 3) orange 4) darker

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) yellow 2) Red 3) Green
4) white 5) darker 6) predators 7) preys

3) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The coral reef is very bright.
2) Some animals are poisonous.
3) Red and yellow make orange.
4) Predators catch and eat preys.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) under the sea 2) predators 3) smaller
4) Some fish and some plants. 5) Yes, they are.

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) land 2) Zookeepers 3) Bats
4) endangered 5) soil 6) pond
7) water lily 8) flat 9) zoos

2) Read and complete.

1) flat 2) flowers 3) roots

Activities on Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) hide 2) bright
3) Predators 4) poisonous

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) animals 2) invertebrates 3) backbone

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) birds 2) hard 2) wings
3) No, most birds can fly, but some can't.
4) Because they eat different food.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) artisan 2) flowers

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) slowly 2) fast 3) bigger
4) biggest 5) quickly

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The ostrich is faster than the leopard.

Model Answers

2) Most reptiles have four legs.

3) Some fish are very brightly colored.

7) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**.

"Insects"

Insects are invertebrates. They have six legs. The grasshoppers are very amazing insects. Some insects can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs and is called arachnid.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) community 2) town
3) neighborhood 4) citizenship

2) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) citizenship 2) ideas 3) polite 4) mine
5) hers 6) ours 7) his 8) theirs

3) **Read the following text and answer the questions**.

1) community 2) school 3) family

4) A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.

5) In our city or village.

4) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**.

"My community"

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. It's a mixture of people, places and ideas. It includes the activities you can do. For me, I live in a city. I do many things that are good for my community. I'm always polite and helpful at my school and my sports club.

Lesson (2)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) write 2) scribes 3) special 4) symbols

2) **Read and complete the dialog with words from the box**.

1) ancient 2) three 3) Upper

3) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) used 2) wrote 3) start 4) was
5) unite 6) scribes 7) hieroglyphs
8) started

4) **Read the following text and answer the questions**.

1) history 2) Africa 3) Egypt
4) About 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. 5) Mena

5) **Order the words to make correct sentences**.

1) Upper Egypt was in the south.
2) The ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs.
3) Children learned to become a scribe at school.

6) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**.

"The history of Egypt"

Egypt has a long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile 9,000 years ago. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. Mena joined these two parts to unite Egypt. There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt: the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom and the New Kingdom.

Lesson (3)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) Alexandria 2) important 3) port 4) capital

2) **Read and complete the text with words from the box**.

1) population 2) capital 3) oasis

3) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) cities and countryside 2) Aswan
3) 27 4) lower 5) beach 6) Dam
7) city 8) diving 9) port 10) south
11) ships 12) map 13) water 14) upper

4) **Order the words to make correct sentences**.

1) There are 27 governorates in Egypt.
2) New Valley is the biggest governorate.
3) How many people live in Cairo Governorate?
4) Damietta Governorate is 1200 square kilometers.

5) **Read the following text and answer the questions**.

1) Aswan 2) Engineers 3) thousand
4) In Aswan. 5) It has a beach which is over 1,000 km.

6) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**.

"Alexandria"

I live in Alexandria. It is in the north of Egypt. It has a big sea and beautiful beaches. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Lesson (4)

1) **Read and complete the text with words from the box**.

1) know 2) pictures 3) instruments

2) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**.

1) oboe 2) shabbaba 3) string

4) Saidi 5) over 6) clap 7) singing

3) **Order the words to make correct sentences**
1) Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
2) What kind of music do you like?
3) Music was important in ancient Egypt.

4) **Read the following text and answer the questions**
1) music 2) south 3) instruments
4) Saidi music. 5) In the deserts of Egypt.

5) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**

"Music in Egypt"

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. Musicians in farther south of Egypt play Nubian music. Masicians in the deserts play Bedouin music. The rebaba is a Bedouin instrument. Clapping and drumming is part of music.

Lessons (5&6)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) craft 2) quickly 3) patterns 4) famous

2) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) Folk 2) colorful 3) rhythm
4) Attractions 5) Culture

3) **Order the words to make correct sentences**
1) Carpet making is an Egyptian craft.
2) You can buy khayameya in many stores.
3) Nubian dancing is lively and colorful.

4) **Read the following text and answer the questions**
1) history 2) beautifully 3) big
4) Tent makers.
5) .You can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

5) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**

"Carpet making"

Carpet making is an Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful. Each carpet is made carefully, using Egyptian wool. Qashqai and Shirazi carpets are famous for the complicated patterns in red and blue.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) scribes 2) hieroglyphs 3) symbols 4) tombs

2) **Read and complete the dialog with words from the box**
1) countryside 2) New Valley 3) people

3) **Read the following text and answer the questions**
1) carpet 2) quickly 3) slowly
4) It takes many years.
5) They're famous for their complicated patterns in red and blue.

4) The Reader

A) **Read and write (T) True or (F) False**
1) T 2) F

B) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) picture 2) help

5) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) were 2) hers 3) his
4) ours 5) wrote

6) **Order the words to make correct sentences**
1) Nubian dancing is lovely.
2) I live in the Alexandria Governorate.
3) A community is a place where you live.

7) **Write a text of FORTY (40) words**

"Aswan"

I live in Aswan. It is the farthest governorate in the south of Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. It's famous for its history and magic location. Visitors like to see the High Dam and Lake Nasser. They can enjoy seeing many monuments. They go on a boat on the Nile. It's a beautiful governorate.

Activities on Review (1)

1) **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) drink 2) changes
3) respiratory 4) nose

2) **Read and complete the dialog with words from the box**
1) meet 2) Governorate 3) capital

3) **Read the following text and answer the questions**
1) plants 2) large 3) water
4) The large flat leaf. 5) The roots.

4) The Reader

A) **Read and write (T) True or (F) False**
1) F 2) T

B) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d**
1) birds 2) pilot

Model Answers

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) slowly 2) bigger 3) better
4) theirs 5) united

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The elephant is smaller than the blue whale.
2) Egypt has lots of traditional music.
3) What are the three primary colors?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My Governorate"

I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It's in the east of Egypt. It's a beautiful governorate. There is a lot to see and do there. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) village 2) sparsely
3) traditional 4) isolated

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Greater Cairo 2) densely 3) shops

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) urban 2) dense 3) aren't
4) pedestrian 5) metropolitan 6) congestion

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Greater Cairo 2) Pedestrians 3) sparsely
4) She lives in Greater Cairo.
5) There are more than 20 million inhabitants.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Where do you live?
2) More people live in rural areas.
3) My village is sparsely populated.

6) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) sparsely 2) people 3) isolated 4) services

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Where I live"

I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants. It's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars, so there is also congestion. There are a lot of services here; shops, markets and schools.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) goose 2) women 3) animals
4) a cat 5) babies

2) Write the plural form of the following nouns.

1) donkeys 2) women 3) potatoes
4) buffaloes 5) men 6) cities
7) teeth 8) dates 9) people
10) sisters 11) babies 12) children
13) mountains 14) deer 15) geese
16) brothers 17) tomatoes 18) sheep
19) buses 20) fish 21) families

Activities

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) village 2) farmer 3) six 4) cats

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) village 2) job 3) farmer

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sheep 2) brother 3) people 4) children
5) is 6) babies 7) sisters 8) boys
9) geese 10) Buffaloes

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) There are six sheep and two buffaloes.
2) Do you have any brothers or sisters?
3) My family lives in a traditional home.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My father's farm"

Student's answer

Lesson (3)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) so that 2) After 3) before
4) although 5) after

2) Read and complete with.

1) although 2) while 3) so that
4) before 5) Every time

Activities

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) traditional 2) artisans 4) rural 3) beautiful

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) so that 2) although 3) As soon as
4) while 5) although 6) after
7) sheep 8) artisans

3) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) What do artisans use to make a carpet?
2) They collect the wool from sheep.
3) My father took me to the workshop.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) yarn 2) dry 3) grandmother
4) Yesterday 5) The guide

Lesson (4)

1) Answer the multiplication problems

1) $21 \times 24 = 504$ 2) $36 \times 8 = 288$

2) Answer the division problems

1) $240 \div 6 = 40$ 2) $693 \div 3 = 231$

3) Answer this problem with fractions

1) $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$, $1 - \frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$ 2) $\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$

Lessons (5&6)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) Alexandria 2) many 3) Do

2) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) We should protect the environment.
2) There is good public transportation.
3) People can walk to work.
4) We need green spaces.

3) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Alexandria"

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) village 2) Nile 3) farmer 4) football

3) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) spinning 2) so that 3) craft

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) smart 2) protect
3) homes 4) Using bikes 5) happy

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) invents 2) art

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) sheep 2) so that 3) men
4) Every time 5) although

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Do you have any sisters?
2) Artisans can weave carpets.
3) The wool is collected from the sheep.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My city"

I'm Zein. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. It is the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has a port. There is a lot of industry there. I like to go to the beach and the gardens. I like my city.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) water 2) ground 3) soil 4) natural

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) wood 2) renewable 3) nature

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) Natural 2) stone 3) petroleum
4) renewable 5) wood

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) natural resources 2) stone 3) materials
4) Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.
5) Plastic is made from petroleum.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) Fossil fuels 2) coal
3) ground 4) electricity

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) non-renewable 2) fossil
3) natural gas

Model Answers

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Gameela wakes up at 7 o'clock.
2) She does her homework after lunch.
3) We have built cities with hospitals.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) oil	2) gas	3) fuels	4) fuel
5) wells	6) raises	7) cries	8) fixes
9) watches	10) visits	11) Global	12) gases
13) cooking	14) ground		

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Gameela 2) movie 3) dinner
4) Gameela wakes up at 7 o'clock.
5) She catches the bus to go home.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fossil fuels"

Fossil fuels are a non-renewable resource of energy. Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. Fossil fuels cause global warming and climate change. Fossil fuels will run out one day.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) energy 2) sunlight 3) electrical 4) television

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) space 2) panels 3) cheap

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) out	2) panels	3) expensive	
5) can't	5) after	6) trucks	
7) desert	8) cheap	9) next	10) dusty

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Solar panels collect energy from the sun.
2) Solar energy is turned into electrical energy.
3) We need to make electricity.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Solar Power"

Solar energy is a renewable resource of energy. We use solar panels to collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes. Solar panels are expensive, but electricity from solar power is cheap.

Lesson (4)

1) Read and match

1) d 2) a 3) b c

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) her	2) his	3) their	their
5) her	6) He	7) They	
8) his	9) her		

3) Read and circle

her / their / his / her / his

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) project	solver	open	get
5) polite	Dear	7) for	
8) Communicate		End	
10) advertisement		Teamwork	
12) Share	13) Make	respect	

2) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Are you interested in clean energy?
2) Be a problem solver. You should be polite.

3) Write an email

To : zahramansour@mansourdesign.eg
Subject : Job application
Dear Ms. Zahra,

I'm writing because I saw your advertisement on a website. I'd be very interested in working for you as a designer of cell phone chargers. I studied engineering at Cairo University. I worked as an engineer for an electronic company for a year. I'm very interested in solar energy. I could travel for an interview at any time. I look forward to hearing form you soon.

Yours sincerely,
Ziad Mohamed

Activities on Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) skill 2) Share 3) complete upset

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) change 2) sunlight mechanical

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) natural resources 2) replaced 3) wood
4) The sun, wind and falling water.
5) From nature.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) teacher 2) join

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) cries 2) watches 3) their
4) her 5) watch

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Fossil fuels are natural resources.
2) Sama did her science project.
3) Teamwork is very important for success.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Being a good team member"

Teamwork is very important for the success of any project. You should communicate with the other members. You should listen to others' ideas. Stay calm and don't get upset. Be a problem solver. Be on time for work and work hard. Be reliable, and responsible.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) school 2) river 3) goods 4) traveled

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) train 2) boats 3) airplanes

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) pipes 2) rail 3) air 4) water
5) road 6) Have 7) ever 8) by

4) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Have you ever taken a river ferry?
2) The Suez Canal is 193 kilometres long.
3) I've never traveled by ship.

5) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Different kinds of transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. In rivers, you can see boats and ferries. If you want to travel faster, you can travel on an airplane. Trains are also good means of transport. They're comfortable. You can travel by road on a bus.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) take 2) won't 3) will you
4) tomorrow 5) won't

2) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Will you travel to the moon?
2) There will be a space station on Mars.
3) People won't use fossil fuels to heat their houses.
4) Most families will have a personal robot at home.

3) Write the contractions? Follow the example

2) we won't 3) He'll 4) They'll
5) She'll 6) You won't

Activities

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) will 2) take 3) fly

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) fly 2) will use 3) won't 4) tomorrow

3) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Will they take a train to Aswan?
2) She will travel on a ship.
3) Will people use flying cars in the future?

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) spacecrafts 2) jobs 3) work

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) advertisement 2) VR 3) robots
4) User 5) specific 6) best 7) search
8) safe 9) design 10) space 11) on
12) up 13) robot 14) technology

3) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) A search engine is a website.
2) People will build cities under water.
3) People design spacecraft to travel into space.

Lesson (4)

1) Read and match

1) b 2) c 3) a

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) personal 2) obvious 3) ten

Model Answers

3 Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) Use capital letters for a passphrase.

2) Add spaces to make it stronger.

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Passwords and passphrases"

To create a strong password or a passphrase, don't use personal information. Don't use easy or obvious words. Don't use less than ten characters. Choose different words and add spaces to make it stronger. Use some capital letters. By these things your password will be safe.

Lessons (5&6)

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) water 2) Airplanes 3) fresh

2 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) four 2) waves 3) ships

4) In Suez. 5) To many countries

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Transporting goods"

There are many ways of transporting goods and products. We can transport them by water on ships. We can transport them by air. Airplanes are fast. We can use rail, road and pipe lines for transportation.

Activities on Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) Virtual Reality 2) eyes

3) Museums 4) Universities

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box .

1) bus 2) Where 3) went

3 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) transportation 2) modern 3) ships

4) People used to transport their goods on camels or on ships. 5) The plane

4) The Reader

4 Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) T 2) F

8 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) traveling 2) wonderful

9 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) will take 2) build 3) will fly

4) won't 5) Will

6 Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) When do you use passwords?

2) I won't sit by the window.

3) Have you ever traveled on a ship?

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Creating passwords"

To be safe on the internet, you should create a strong password. Don't use personal information. Don't tell your friends about your password. Don't use easy or obvious words. Don't use less than ten characters.

The Story

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) T

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) bored 2) tent 3) train 4) pleased

5) good 6) artisans 7) lotus flowers

8) sew

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) T 2) F 3) T 4) T 5) T

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) clever 2) math 3) invents

4) art 5) layers 6) teacher

7) Khayameya 8) summer

Final Revision Answers

Unit (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) eat 2) stomach 3) changes 4) bodies

-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) Games 2) four 3) Parasports

4) athletes

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box .

1) five 2) hear 3) eyes

-Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) sign 2) hands 3) different

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d . Vocabulary

1) deaf 2) Muscles 3) heart 4) skeleton

5) blind 6) gold 7) digestive

8) respiratory 9) sign 10) place

11) Bones 12) part 13) tongue

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) is 2) weighs 3) has 4) looks
5) every 6) does 7) has 8) plays
9) go 10) He 11) do
12) have 13) listens

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) healthy 2) 75% 3) fiber
4) It includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water.
5) We need them for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Mom wants to tidy the lounge.
2) We play tennis after school.
3) They are tired and bored.
4) What are we doing today, Mom?

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We use our senses every day to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see. We use our nose to smell. We use our ears to hear and our tongue to taste. We can feel with our skin.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our respiratory system"

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Scientists 2) smallest
3) chameleon 4) frog

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) plants 2) flowers 3) attract 4) Insects

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) zoo 2) elephants 3) mammals

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) cold-blooded 2) soft 3) Arachnids

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) lions 2) seeds 3) beaks 4) scales
5) gills 6) moist 7) cold 8) water
9) fins 10) warm 11) African
12) mammal 13) vertebrates 14) bee

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) smaller 2) biggest 3) bigger 4) smallest
5) biggest 6) taller 7) smallest 8) quickly
9) well 10) the biggest 11) slowly
12) quickly 13) stronger 14) easily

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) 400,000 2) pollen 3) plants
4) Primary colors and secondary colors.
5) By mixing red and yellow.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Leopards are larger than cheetahs.
2) Ostriches are faster than horses.
3) Sloths are slower than giant tortoises.
4) Green anacondas are the heaviest snakes.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Keeping animals at the zoo"

Keeping animals at the zoo has some advantages and disadvantages. It is a wrong habitat for the animals because they don't feel free. It protects the animals from dangers. Children can visit the zoo and watch the animals, have fun and learn about them. The vet and zookeepers can look after animals.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills ; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) community 2) friends
3) citizenship 4) polite

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Ancient 2) Scribes
3) Musicians 4) pyramids

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Saidi 2) instruments 3) drumming

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) population 2) capital 3) oasis

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) governorates 2) biggest 3) south
4) united 5) Citizenship 6) Scribes 7) folk

Model Answers

8) 27
9) community
10) papyrus
11) High Dam
12) three
13) oboes
14) hieroglyphs

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) hers 2) theirs 3) your 4) his
5) my 6) his 7) yours 8) were
9) did 10) started 11) wrote
12) studied 13) mine 14) was

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) crafts 2) colors 3) decorate
4) Tent makers
5) In many traditional stores and markets.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How many people live in Cairo?
2) New Valley is the biggest Governorate.
3) My favorite instrument is the oud.
4) Bedouin music includes singing and drumming.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"My governorate"

I live in Giza Governorate. It's very big. It's west of Cairo. It's famous for the pyramids. It has many interesting places. I go to the zoo on Fridays to see the animals. I can also enjoy the River Nile.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Ancient Egypt"

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile so boats could sail on it.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Alexandria 2) city 3) second 4) port

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) 11 2) family 3) services 4) month

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) workshop 2) artisans 3) enjoy

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) guide 2) Artisans 3) dye

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Vocabulary

1) village 2) sheep 3) River
4) inhabitants 5) Artisans 6) guide
7) carpets 8) metropolitan 9) densely
10) isolated 11) carpets 12) buffaloes
13) Pedestrians 14) looms

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Grammar

1) although 2) while 3) even though
4) so that 5) Every time 6) after
7) as soon as 8) while 9) Every time
10) so that 11) before 12) before
13) Although 14) Every time

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) father 2) carpet 3) yarn
4) Last week. 5) The guide.

5) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Artisans make beautiful carpets.
2) We chop vegetables before we cook them.
3) Habiba couldn't sleep although she was tired.
4) We have a lot of animals on our farm.

6) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Carpet making"

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet, first they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

- Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My city"

I live in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's a beautiful city. There are a lot of services. There are schools, shops and malls. It's sparsely populated. It has 17 neighborhoods. There are beautiful beaches. I often go there on Fridays and swim in the sea. Tourists like to visit my city.

Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) nature 2) stone 3) forests 4) Gold

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) engineering 2) wind 3) Spain 4) calm

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) nature 2) non-renewable 3) gas

- Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) career 2) project
3) promotion 4) train

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d . Vocabulary

1) Wind 2) warming 3) sun
4) renewable 5) rainy 6) forests 7) soil
8) expensive 9) solutions 10) Training 11) calm
12) Skill 13) collaborate 14) Promotion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d . Grammar

1) wakes 2) her 3) fixes 4) his
5) finishes 6) my 7) watches 8) their
9) drinks 10) his 11) goes 12) their
13) washes 14) their

4 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) naturally 2) Metal 3) finish
4) Renewable and non-renewable.
5) The problem is once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) We can't destroy energy.
2) Solar panels collect sunlight.
3) Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.
4) There are two kinds of natural resources.

6 Write the email .

To : Mahmoudgamal@gmail.com
From : Ahmed20@gmail.com
Subject : Job application

Dear Mr Mahmoud,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies Website. I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar Park for one year. I could travel to Cairo for an interview or meet online at any time from Saturday to Friday. I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,
Ahmed

Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) window 2) ships 3) big 4) friends

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) transport 2) slowly 3) Ships 4) faster

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box .

1) bus 2) drives 3) plane

Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) Designer 2) technology 3) safe

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d . Vocabulary

1) pipes 2) rail 3) water 4) road
5) machines 6) trains 7) search engine
8) browser 9) research 10) characters
11) safe 12) Canal 13) for 14) on

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d . Grammar

1) go 2) won't 3) will be 4) use
5) I will 6) will have 7) won't 8) have
9) won't 10) will be 11) Will 12) fly
13) tomorrow 14) Will you

4 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) slowly 2) airplanes 3) faster
4) By air. 5) Pipelines.

5 Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) I've never traveled by plane.
2) Don't tell your friends your passwords.
3) Robots will fly airplanes in the future.
4) Will people live on the moon?

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Being safe online"

The internet in very important, We all use it for many purposes, So, it in important to be safe online. You should create a strong password. Don't tell your friends your password. Don't share your personal information. You should use the safe search option in your browser.

Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Travelling by air is the most comfortable. Ships travel on water. We can travel from the suburbs to the city by road. Going by rail is more comfortable than driving. We can transport goods and products long distances by water. Ships can carry large items.

Exam (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) rabbit 2) clean 3) vet 4) trash

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) club 2) volleyball 3) What time

3 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) nurse 2) four 3) doctors
4) A bakery 5) Because she looks after them.

Model Answers

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) summer 2) artisans

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) mine 2) Did 3) but
4) often 5) went

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) What are you doing today?
2) Scribes were important in ancient Egypt.
3) Do you have a red car?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My plants and animals"

Plants are very important in our life. They give us oxygen. They make us breathe fresh air so we are healthy. We can grow a lot of trees. I like farm animals. They give us milk and nice meat.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) trees 2) bananas 3) herd 4) tails

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) nose 2) lungs 3) body

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) cooking 2) good 3) Alexandria
4) His food is the best in Alexandria.
5) He wants to open his own restaurant.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) Grandpa 2) stitches

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) study 2) slowly 3) the fastest
4) mine 5) Did

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) The food goes to our stomach.
2) How do we use our senses?
3) Fish take in oxygen through their gills.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My community"

I live with my family in an apartment. I like playing with my friends in my community. My community includes houses, streets and schools. I live in a nice neighborhood.

Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) digestive 2) breathe 3) skeleton 4) Bones

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) non-renewable 2) oil 3) gases

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) weather 2) river 3) temples
4) 27 governorates. 5) To enjoy the fine weather.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) eyes 2) teacher

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) lives 2) go 3) watches
4) did 5) used

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Our heart pumps blood around the body.
2) We can't make solar power on a rainy day.
3) How many people live in Cairo?

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My city"

I live in a big city. Many people live in my city. There are cars in the streets. You can see shops and parks in my city. It's a beautiful place.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) good 2) muscles 3) calories 4) Mental

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

1) took 2) team 3) in

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) dolls 2) happy 3) sister
4) Tomorrow
5) She found the doll.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) summer 2) artisans

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) goes 2) play 3) joined
4) became 5) will travel

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
2) We breathe in air through our nose.

3) People who are deaf can learn sign language.

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"A visit to the zoo"

I went to the zoo last week. I went with my family. We went by car. We saw many animals and birds. The lion is very strong. The elephant is the biggest animal. We played football. In the afternoon. We had our lunch. We came back home in the evening. We enjoyed ourselves very much.

Exam (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) digestive 2) teeth 3) stomach 4) energy

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) villages 2) fruits 3) green

3 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) zoo 2) safe 3) large

4) They can see animals from different countries.

5) Because they are used to wide, open places.

4) The Reader

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) T 2) F

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) camouflage 2) largest

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) goes 2) bigger 3) ours

4) united 5) have

6 Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) Why don't you write about insects?

2) Fish take in oxygen through gills.

3) I always wash my hands before eating.

7 Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"Having a pet"

It's fun to have pets. It's good to learn about how to look after them. You can learn about their species. Some animals such as dogs need to walk which is good exercise. They need a lot of care and attention. It can be expensive to have a pet. Animals can be noisy. Some animals can cause a mess. Some animals bite.

Exam (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) different 2) breathe 3) organs 4) digestive

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box .

1) shares 2) problem 3) positive

3 Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) computers 2) hurt 3) tickets

4) Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports.

5) Young children play games for long hours and it isn't good for their health.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) cooler 2) stitches

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) slowly 2) started 3) so that

4) their 5) won't

6) Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) Plants use water to grow.

2) Have you ever traveled on a train?

3) Amphibians always lay their eggs in water.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words .

"A place you would like to visit"

I would like to visit Aswan. It's in the south of Egypt. The Nile goes along Aswan. People there are kind and friendly. The weather there is very nice in winter. I'd like to visit the High Dam when I go there.

Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) skin 2) top

3) a,b and c 4) bottom

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box .

1) bus 2) drives 3) plane

3) Read the following text and answer the questions .

1) rainy 2) here 3) sandwich

4) He works in a school. 5) Because it rained.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False .

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) invertebrates 2) third

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1) eat 2) biggest 3) has

4) although 5) slowly

6) Order the words to make correct sentences .

1) Why don't you write about invertebrates?

2) Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

3) Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.

Model Answers

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Human body"

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Egypt 2) football 3) TV 4) squash

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Governorate 2) west 3) Pyramids

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) plants 2) water lily 3) large
4) Most plants grow in soil.
5) Their roots spread under the water.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) bored 2) clever

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) before 2) slower 3) have
4) easily 5) is

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) A grasshopper can jump high.
2) All birds have feathers.
3) Giant tortoises are faster than sloths.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

We have five senses. We use our senses to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Egypt 2) hot 3) winters 4) Cairo

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) breathe 2) lay 3) fins

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) a & b 2) apartment 3) shops
4) She lives in Alexandria.
5) Montaza Palace is her favorite place.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) math 2) Tent

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) after 2) stronger 3) travel
4) walks 5) started

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) A blue whale is bigger than a whale shark.
2) I get tired after exercising.
3) Greenhouse gases are bad for the environment.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being healthy"

To be healthy, we should have healthy food. We should eat a lot of fruits and vegetables. We should play sports and do exercise. We have to drink plenty of water. We shouldn't watch too much TV. We should have enough sleep.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) art 2) language 3) numbers school

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) went 2) bus book

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) Red Sea 2) nearest 3) thousand
4) It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt.
5) In 1970.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) train 2) math

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) weighs 2) after biggest
4) well 5) their

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Noha walks to school every day.
2) Music was important in ancient Egypt.
3) Solar farms need very big spaces.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Summer camp"

I go camping in the summer with my friends. We spend a week there. We do many mental activities there. We play sports together. We have a lot of competitions. We have fun.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) English 2) after 3) mother 4) subject

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) lounge 2) Why 3) practice

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) Vertebrates 2) mammals 3) hair

4) There are five different types of vertebrates.

5) Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) art 2) pleased

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) slowly 2) are 3) so that

4) taller 5) will have

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

2) Our brain controls how we move.

3) We need a good diet to stay healthy.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Music"

Music was important in ancient Egypt. There are many kinds of music now in Egypt. There are folk music and traditional music. In Upper Egypt, there is Saidi music. There are many musical instruments in Egypt. Singing and drumming is a key.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) Friday 2) brother

3) a restaurant 4) jacket

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) capital 2) many

3) governorates

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) complex 2) wool 3) craft

4) Red and blue.

5) A skilled person can work quickly.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) T 2) F

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) good 2) layers

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) speaks 2) will use 3) her

4) biggest 5) quickly

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) I live in a small village on the Nile.

2) How many people live in Cairo?

3) The baby cries when she is hungry.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"My governorate"

I live in Alexandria. It is in the north of Egypt. It has a big sea and beautiful beaches. The beaches are always busy. There is a lot of interesting places to go to. My favourite place is Montaze Palace. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) advice 2) healthy 3) brain 4) sleep

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) go 2) bus 3) saw

3) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) English 2) densely 3) careful

4) She lives in Behiera Governorate.

5) More than 10 million.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False

1) F 2) T

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) sew 2) train

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1) has 2) their 3) so that

4) will travel 5) biggest

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

1) Noura plays volleyball on Monday.

2) Our brain controls how we move.

3) Some invertebrates can swim very well.

7) Write a text of FORTY (40) words

"Aswan"

I live in Aswan. It's in the south of Egypt. The Nile goes along Aswan. Engineers finished building the High Dam in Aswan in 1970. It is a very beautiful governorate.